



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

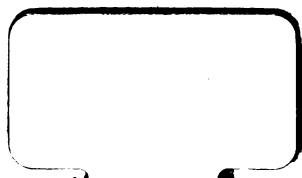
GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH
LANGUAGE.



BRITISH MUSEUM LIBRARY



600085650U





A GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE

FOR PUPIL TEACHERS
AND THE MORE ADVANCED CLASSES IN SCHOOLS

BY THE AUTHOR OF
'MADEMOISELLE MORI' 'THE ATELIER DU LYS' &c.



LONDON
NATIONAL SOCIETY'S DEPOSITORY
BROAD SANCTUARY, WESTMINSTER
1882

[All rights reserved]
303. a. 374.

LONDON: PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

PREFACE.

NOTWITHSTANDING the many excellent grammars already existing, it has been found that one is still needed, having especially in view the requirements of pupil-teachers, teachers in training, students in the upper classes of schools, and others who are preparing for examinations, but can only devote a few hours weekly to the study of French.

The number of such persons is rapidly increasing, and they need a text-book which will explain simply and clearly the differences in the construction of French and English, and the chief difficulties which a learner will encounter. An attempt has been made to meet their requirements in this grammar.

Among the chief authorities used in compiling it have been more especially Littré's *Dictionnaire de la Langue Française*, Bescherelle's Grammar, and the valuable works of M. Brachet. Several passages for translation are taken from the *Guide Pratique* of Mlle. Yon, by the kind permission of the author and her publisher, M. Hachette.

A GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

INTRODUCTION.

Preliminary Remarks on the History of the French Language.

1. WHEN the Romans invaded Gaul (or France, as it is now called), that branch of the Indo-European languages which is known as *Keltic* was spoken there; but in the course of some 300 years, during which all business had been carried on in Latin, Roman colonists had flocked in, and Latin was taught in the schools, Keltic became almost forgotten, except in Brittany, where it is still spoken. The like happened in our own country, where the Kelts were driven westward into Cornwall, where their tongue lived on into modern times, though it is now extinct, and into Wales, where it is still spoken.

2. But the Gauls did not speak what is called Classical Latin, that is, the Latin of books and educated men. Their Keltic accent altered the Latin words; the rules of grammar became more and more neglected, and words were invented as new needs occurred. This dialect became known as the *lingua romana rustica*; and when the Franks settled in Gaul, they adopted it, altering it still further by bringing in German words relating to the chase, to war, and to sea-faring, and by their foreign pronunciation, as we see by such

words as *haut* (*altus*) and *hurler* (*ululare*), which come down from a people who said *halt* and *huller*. The syntax of the *lingua rustica*, however, remained purely Latin. We can trace the gradual changes which came over the languages by means of documents, such as the *Oath of the Soldiers of Karl the Bald*; and we find that by the tenth century there were numerous dialects spoken in France, no one of which had yet any marked superiority over the others. North of the Loire prevailed the *langue d'oïl*; but this again fell into four dialects—the Picard, Norman, Burgundian, and French, all of which still exist; and south of the Loire reigned the *langue d'oc*, which has named a province, and is still spoken by the peasants in that district. *French was at first merely the dialect spoken in and round the Île de France*, the part of the country which belonged to the kings; but as the royal power grew, so this dialect spread, until it became the language of books and of educated people. By the fifteenth century it had become nearly what it is now.

3. All languages grow simpler as time goes on. Old French had two cases for the nouns—the subjective and objective; but only the second now survives. The unaccented syllable with which the objective case ended was dropped, or replaced by *e* mute. In all words one syllable has a stronger stress laid on it than the others: this stress is called **the tonic accent**, and the syllable on which it is laid is **the tonic syllable**; the others being *atonic*, or unaccented. *The Latin accent is preserved in all French words of popular origin, as in *ange* (*angelus*)*. The short atonic syllable before the tonic is dropped out, as is the medial consonant. *Mûr*, ripe, from *maturus*, is an instance of this rule. All words which break it are modern, and invented by learned men, instead of passing through the mouths of the people. For example, *blâme* strictly follows this rule, but *blasphème* breaks it. The one is popular, the other learned French. *The accent in French always falls upon the last syllable, unless the word ends in *e* mute, when it is on the penultimate.*

4. The foreign words embodied in French may be divided into the following classes :—

(1) A small number of Keltic words, and a larger of German.
 (2) About 400 Italian words, chiefly introduced in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, when Italy exercised a strong influence over France; among these are *balcon*, *carrosse*, and *infanterie*.

(3) The history of a country always influences its language, and in the seventeenth century the constant intercourse with Spain brought in a flood of Spanish words, some of which took lasting root, as *duègne*, *guitare*, *nègre*.

(4) After this time few new words were introduced until the time of the first revolution. Since then new thoughts, new inventions, and acquaintance with foreign literature have brought in a great number, such as *budget*, *sport*, *tunnel*. The number of these is continually increasing.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

5. EVERY word is composed of one or more sounds. There is only one sound in *mot*; two in *en-fant*; three in *ca-na-pé*. Each of these sounds is a syllable.

Sounds are represented in writing by letters.

There are twenty-five letters in the French alphabet, six vowels and nineteen consonants.

These six vowels can be made to represent twelve sounds, thus :—

A, pronounced as in *mart*.

E mute, as in *le*, *de*, *parle*. This sound is heard in English in *patter*, *battery*.

E ouvert (open), *mère*, *père*, *cher*, as in the English word *there*.

E fermé (close), as in *tête*, *dé*, or in English, *may*.

The open **e** is uttered with the mouth well opened; *ai* and *ei* have the same sound: ex. *chaise*, *Seine*.

The mute **e** is scarcely articulated.

The close **e** is said with the lips scarcely parted.

Examples of the three kinds will be found in the word *évêque*, bishop. The first *é* is close; the second open; the third mute.

I or y (which is called *ygrec*, or Greek *e*, from its likeness to the long *e* in Greek) is always short. Both are pronounced like *e* in *Eva*, unless *y* comes next to a vowel, when it sounds like *ee*: ex. *pays*, country, pronounced *payee*.

O has both a long and a short sound. It is short in *dévôte* (a devout woman; the word has a tinge of contempt). Here the *o* has something of the sound which we give it in *cob*; with a circumflex accent it sounds like the *o* in *no*: *nôtre*, our. *Au* and *eau* have the same sound.

U is short in *butte*, a knoll; long in *bûche*, a log. The sound of *u* in French is impossible to render by any combination of English letters, but is found in some dialects; the Devonshire way of pronouncing *oo*, or *oe*, comes very near a French *u*.

The Latin vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, seem to have been pronounced as they now are in French; but *e* was said like *a* in *pay*, and *u* like *oo* in *coo*.

Ê, eu, and u as now pronounced are sounds which have gradually crept into French: the first is derived from *ā* in Latin; the second from an accented *o* (ex. *illorum*, of them, contracted in French into *leur*); *u* from the Latin *oo*.

These vowels make another set of sounds in *au*, *eu*, *ou*, *ui*, all of which ought to be heard from French lips if a correct notion of them is to be acquired.

By *nasal vowels* are meant the sound produced when a vowel is followed by either *m* or *n* with another consonant, as *raconter*, *flamber*; or when a vowel precedes *m* or *n* in the last syllable of a word, as *raisin*, *son*, *bien*.

These sounds were unknown to Latin and very early French.

French diphthongs usually come from that dropping out of Latin consonants, which has caused French to be described as 'shortened Latin': ex. *aïeul* (popular Latin, *atriolus*); *reine* from *regina*.

6. The word **Consonant** means *sounding with*, because these letters cannot be uttered without the help of a vowel. They are pronounced thus : **b**, *bay* ; **c**, *say* ; **d**, *day* ; **p**, *pay* ; **t**, *tay* ; **v**, *vay* ; **k**, *kah* ; **f**, *eff* ; **g** and **j** have the same soft sound as in *j'ai* and *géant*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, but it is more guttural before *a*, *o*, *th*.

H (*ahche*) is either mute or aspirated. It is mute in *honneur*, *homme* ; aspirated in *hasard*, *honte*, *haie*. It is not heard in these words, which are said like *asard*, *onte*, *aie* ; but shows that the vowel which follows it is strongly breathed. The article is elided before *h* mute ; we write *l'homme*, *l'honneur*, but it is not elided before the aspirated *h* : ex. *le hasard*, *la honte*. Custom requires a slight pause before a word in which the aspirated *h* occurs, but in some provinces of France—Normandy for instance—it is wrongly pronounced almost like an English *h*.

Ch has the same sound as in *Charlotte*, or *sh* in *shall*. *Ph* answers to *f*, or *ph* in *Philip*.

In *th* the last letter is not pronounced at all, *thé*, tea, being said like *tay*.

K is said like *kah*, or as *ca* in *cart* ; **L**, *ell* ; but there is also a sound known as *l mouillée*, when the *l* is scarcely heard, as in *fille*, *famille*, *soleil*. This sound is only heard in words where *l* is preceded by *i*, and no rule can be given as to when it is used ; in *ville* and *mille* the ordinary pronunciation is always heard.

M and **N** are said like the English letters ; **Q** like no Eng. sound ; **R**, *aire* ; **S**, *ess* ; **X**, *eex*, the same sound as in *cheeks* ; **Z**, *zayde*.

7. The CONSONANTS may be divided into—

Labials (those formed by the lips), *p*, *b*, *f* (*ph*), *v*.

Dentals (uttered between the teeth), *t*, *d*.

Gutturals (spoken in the throat), *c*, *k*, *q*, *g*, *h*.

Sibilants (hissing sounds), *s*, *z*, *j*.

Liquids (soft sounds blending readily with others), *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*.

8. French is spoken much more with the lips than is English. It has no guttural sounds, like German, and comparatively few of those hissing sounds which made the Emperor Charles V. say that English was a language only fit for geese. The tendency of French has been to soften all hard Latin sounds; *p* has constantly changed into *b*: *abeille* (*apicula*); *p* into *v*: *rive* (*ripa*); and an *c* has frequently been placed before the hard sounds of *sc*, *sn*, *sp*, as *épée* (*spada*), *état* (*status*).

K is only used in words of Greek origin; *W* is unknown to the French alphabet, and, if used in foreign words, is pronounced as *v*. It is represented by *gu*, as *Guillaume*, *guichet*.

The names of the letters are masculine, except *f*, *h*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*
ex. *un c*, *une m*.

9. CAPITALS are not used in French for :

a. The names of months and of days of the week.

b. The names of languages and of nations used adjectively;
ex. *l'anglais*, the English tongue; *un médecin français*, a French doctor; but *il est Français*, he is a Frenchman.

c. The names of titles: *le maréchal de Turenne*, Marshal Turenne; *l'empereur Charles Quint*, the Emperor Charles V.

d. *Je* is always written with a small *j*: ex. *je vais*, I go, except at the beginning of a sentence.

10. Accents and other Orthographic Signs.

There are three kinds of accents :

The accent aigu denotes the close *é*, ex. *Télémaque*.

The accent grave placed on an *à*, or on the open *è*, as *mère*, *déjà*.

The circumflex, marking a long vowel, i.e. a letter on which a stress is laid, ex. *âge*, *gêne*.

These two last accents also are used to distinguish certain words from others which are spelt in the same way, but have a different meaning, ex. *à*, to; *a*, has; *ou*, or; *où*, where; *crû*, grown; *cru*, believed, raw. The circumflex also often marks that a letter, usually *s*, has been dropped out, or that the word has been contracted. Ex. *blâme* (*blasphemum*); *tête*, head, Latin *testa*, a word preserved in the English *tester*.

The circumflex accent is also placed over the vowel of the last syllable but one of the first and second person plural of the *passé défini* in all verbs, and over the last syllable of the third person

singular of the *subjonctif imparfait* (past imperf. subjunctive) of verbs. Ex. *nous parlâmes, vous parlâtes, qu'il parlât, qu'il tint*. We do not find this accent earlier than the sixteenth century, when grammarians borrowed it from the Greek. Even as late as 1694 the Academy condemned this innovation, and the great writers of what is called the Augustan age in France, Massillon, Boileau, and others, scarcely used it.

11. The **Apostrophe** (') replaces at the end of certain words the vowels *a, e, i*, which are suppressed before a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute. Ex. *l'amie, l'ennemi, s'il, entr'ouvert, d'un*. The ear demands this elision (cutting off), as more agreeable than *la amie, le ennemi, si il, entre ouvert, de un*. There are, however, many exceptions, as *si elle*, if she. *Entre* only elides the final *e* where it is part of a compound word, as *entr'ouvert*, half open, *entr'acte*, interlude.

A is only elided in *la*, whether article or pronoun: ex. *je l'ai vue*, I have seen her.

I in *si*, before *il* or *ils*: *s'ils achetaient*, if they were to buy.

E in *je, me, te, se, ne, que, de, ce*, unless when they follow a verb. Ex. *j'aime, c'était juste*, but *est-ce un fait*.

Quelque loses the *e* when it comes before *un* and *une*. *Quelqu'un l'a dit*, some one said it.

Lorsque, puisque, quoique, lose it before *il, ils, elle, elles, on, un, une*. *Lorsqu'il vint*, when he came; but, *lorsque Arthur vint*, when Arthur came; *quoique adorée*, altho' worshipped.

Jusque before *à, au, aux, ici*. *Je viendrai jusqu'ici*, I will come as far as here.

Grande, before *chose, envie, faim, merci, mère, peine, peur, route, tante*. (§ 35.)

Presque only loses its *e* in *presqu'île*, peninsula.

There is no elision before *oui*, yes, *onze*, eleven, *ouate*, wadding, *ouïlan*: *le oui, la ouate*.

12. The **Cédille** (,) is placed under the *c* before *a, o, u*, when these vowels have a soft sound, making the *c* into *ss*:

As *leçon*, lesson, *maçon*, mason, *reçu*, received. The word is from the Italian *zeta*, and means properly *small s*.

13. The *Tiret*, or *Trait-d'union*, unites two or more words, as *beau-frère*, brother-in-law; *a-t-on*, has one!

a. It is also used in interrogative sentences between the verb and the pronoun when these are in the nominative. Ex. *voulez-vous? est-il?*

b. Between the imperative of a verb and the pronoun. Ex. *mangez-le*, eat it. But if the pronoun is followed by a verb which governs it, there is no *trait*. Ex. *allez le dire*.

c. Between *même* and the personal pronoun: *soi-même*, onself, *lui-même*, himself, &c.

d. Between *ci*, *là*, and the nouns or pronouns with which they are connected. Ex. *celui-là*, that one.

e. Between *numerals* from 17 to 80, unless when *et* is used, as *dix-neuf*, but *trente et un*.

14. The *Tréma*, diæresis, is placed on the vowels *i*, *u*, *e*, when they are to be pronounced separately from a vowel which precedes them, as *haïr*, *ambiguë*. But for this, *haïr* would be said like *clair*, and *ambiguë* like *fatigue*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

15. ALL the words in the French language fall into two groups.

a. Words which can be inflected (i.e. alter their endings).

b. Words which cannot be inflected.

The former group contains *le nom*; *l'article*; *l'adjectif*; *le pronom*; *le verbe*.

The latter consists of the *participle* (unless used as a verbal adjective); the *adverbe*; *préposition*; *conjonction*; *interjection*.

These classes are called PARTS OF SPEECH, and correspond to those in the Latin language, except the article, which was unknown to pure Latin.

THE NOUN.

16. THE word **Nom** or **Noun** comes from the Latin **nomen**, a name, and the **Noun Substantive** was so called because it names the nature or substance of a thing.

Ex. *femme*, woman; *lapin*, rabbit; *charité*, charity.

17. Most nouns fall into two groups, *Proper* and *Common*.

The **Proper Noun** is so called because it names only one person or thing, as *Hélène*, *Paris*, *France*, or one special group of persons and things, as *Les Valois*, i.e. the family of Valois.

The word *proper* comes from the Latin *proprius*, own; thus a *proper noun* means a person's or thing's *own* name.

The **Common Noun** is applied to a whole class of objects, as *lapin*, *père*, *homme*. A common noun distinguishes the thing spoken of from all others not of the same kind, but does not distinguish it from those of its own class.

Ex. *le lapin est un quadrupède* (the rabbit is a quadruped), distinguishes the rabbit from everything not a rabbit, but does not distinguish it from another rabbit.

18. A common noun is called a **Collective** when, though singular, it expresses more than one thing:

Ex. *un troupeau*, a flock; *la flotte*, the fleet.

Sometimes a common noun is used as the name of a whole class:

Le lion est le roi des animaux, the lion is the king of beasts. Here *all lions* are meant.

19. An **Abstract Noun** is one which is the name of a quality, state, or action, considered apart from any object to which it may belong.

Ex. *la vérité*, truth; *la foi*, faith; *le sommeil*, sleep; *le rire*, laughing. Or, to give a more familiar illustration, we look at an apple, we see that it is *rosy*, *ripe*, *solid*; if we consider these adjectives

tives in an abstract manner, that is, apart from the apple, we speak of *rosiness, ripeness, solidity*. Abstract nouns are frequently derived in this way from adjectives or verbs.

20. Augmentatives and Diminutives are but little used in French; there are, however, a few, chiefly derived from Italian, e.g.—

on from *one*; ex. *aiguillon*, a dart, from *aiguille*, a needle; *manchon*, muff, from *manche*, sleeve.

ade, from *accio*: ex. *fusillade*, volley, from *fusil*, gun.

The diminutives are formed in

et and ette (*etto* in Italian), ex. *agnelet*, little lamb, from *agneau*, lamb; *libret*, little book, from *livre*; *fillette*, little girl, from *fille*.

In *eau*, *faisandeau*, young pheasant, from *faisan*.

In *elle*, ex. *tourrelle*, little tower, from *tour*, tower.

Proper nouns, as in English, often take diminutives; *Rose* becoming *Rosette*; *Pierre*, *Pierrot*, &c.

âtre gives a bad or contemptuous meaning to a noun; ex. *marâtre*, bad mother (originally stepmother).

So also do *ace* and *asse*; ex. *populace*, rabble; *paperasses*, worthless papers. In English we find the same shade of meaning given by adding *aster* to a noun; ex. *poetaster*.

21. A compound noun (*nom composé*) is formed by joining two or more words together,

As *cerf-volant*, kite; *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow.

Nouns have Gender, Number, and Case.

GENDER.

22. Gender is a word which comes from the Latin *genus* (kind or sort) and is used in English to express sex. *All nouns in French are either masculine or feminine.*

In English the name of anything of neither sex is called a *neuter noun* (stone, tree, house), but in French there is no neuter. It dropped out of the *Sermo Rusticus*, or low Latin, and has disappeared from all the languages known

as Romance, that is, of Roman or Latin origin, such as Italian, Spanish, Portuguese.

In these languages gender only partially answers to any *natural* distinction, and becomes merely grammatical, as *la maison*, house; *le cuivre*, copper. This makes it exceedingly difficult to know of what gender French nouns may be. Only habit and study can teach the gender of what in English we consider as neuter nouns, but a knowledge of Latin will be found very helpful.

The names of the days, months, seasons, and winds, except *mousson*, the monsoon; *la bise*, north wind; of trees and shrubs, except *épine*, thorn; *ronce*, bramble; *ébène*, ebony; *yeuse*, holm-oak; *vigne*, vine; *hièble*, dwarf-elder; *viorne*, viburn; and *bourdaine*, a kind of alder, are masculine, as are also—

Names of mountains, *unless used in the plural*, as *les Alpes*, *les Pyrénées*;

Colours, minerals, metals; names of towns not preceded by *la*; weights and measures of the decimal order, as *grammes*, *litres*, *centimes*;

Adjectives, adverbs, and verbs used as nouns, as *le manger*, eating; *le boire*, drinking.

The following terminations are masculine:

A, except *sépia*, *véranda*, *villa*.

E: nouns ending in *é* preceded by *t* are, however, feminine, except *aparté*, an aside; *arrêté*, an edict, decree; *bénédictité*, grace at meals; *comité*, committee; *côté*, side; *été*, summer; *pâté*, pie; *traité*, treaty; and *comté*, county. *Vicomté* is always feminine; *comté-pairie* is of either gender.

I, except *loi*, law; *foi*, faith; *fourmi*, ant; *merci*, mercy; *paroi*, partition.

O, except *virago*, where the sense requires a feminine.

U, except *bru*, daughter-in-law; *eau*, water; *glu*, glue; *peau*, skin; *tribu*, tribe; *virtu*, virtue.

Age is also a masculine ending, except *cage*, *image*, picture, *nage*, swimming, *page*, of a book, *plage*, flat shore, and *rage*.

Ege, except *allège*, a lighter (boat), and *drège*, a dredge.

Ige, except *tige*, stem; *voltige*, slack rope.

Uge.

N, except *la fin*; some nouns ending in *on*, as *leçon*, lesson *prison*, and all which end in *aïson* and *tion*.

Nouns ending in any other consonant but *x*, except *clef*, key; *nef*, nave of a church; *soif*, thirst; *faim*, hunger; *chair*, flesh; *cour*, court; *cuiller*, spoon; *mer*, sea; *tour*, tower; *brebis*, sheep; *fois*, a time; *souris*, mouse; *vis*, screw; *dent*, tooth; *dot*, dowry; *forêt*, forest; *hart*, halter; *mort*, death; *nuit*, night; *part*.

Aclo, except *débâcle*, breaking up of ice, &c. This word is also used in a figurative sense.

Aire, except *grammaire*, grammar; *affaire*, *chaire*, pulpit; *paire*.

Asme, *isme*, *aste*, except *caste*, *haste*, *lance*, *astre*.

Aume, except *paume*, palm of the hand.

Ment is always a masculine termination, except *jument* (mare); *once* always is feminine, except *silence*.

Eur is usually a feminine termination, but in the sixteenth century grammarians tried to bring back to their original gender those nouns derived from Latin masculines which custom had made feminine. The attempt was a failure, except with *labour*, labour; *honneur*, honour, and a few more. The double gender of *amour*, love, masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural, is a grammatical irregularity arising out of this attempt.

N.B.—Latin neuters generally become masculine in French.

23. Some nouns have no feminine, as *auteur*, author.

These usually express professions belonging generally to men, as *professeur*.

Ex. *cette dame est un auteur distingué*, this lady is a well-known author. If it be necessary to distinguish sex, the word *femme*, female, must be added: *C'est une femme poète*, she is a poetess. *La renne femelle*, or *la femelle du renne*, reindeer.

Others have no masculine, as *la tortue*, tortoise.

In this case *mâle* is added to distinguish the sexes.

Another class remain masculine, even when applied to a female :

Cette dame est son partisan, this lady is his partisan;

or feminine when applied to a male,

As *une recrue*, recruit.

24. The gender of others differs according to their meaning :

Un page, boy ; *une page*, a page of a book. *Un livre*, book ; *une livre*, pound.

Enfant may be masculine or feminine in the singular, but is always masculine in the plural.

The gender of some words, as *orgue*, *hymne*, can only be considered, like that of *amour*, as a grammatical irregularity.

Orgue, organ, is masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural.

Hymne is masculine, as *un hymne de triomphe*, unless it means a hymn sung in church.

Orge, barley, is feminine, except when we speak of *orge mondé*, peeled, and *orge perlé*, pearl barley.

Pâque is feminine when it means the Passover, but when it stands for Easter it is masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural.

Automne is of both genders.

Couple is of very uncertain gender, and has been a battle-field for grammarians. If it signifies a married couple, or one bound together by some law or tie, it is masculine, as *un couple* (pair) *de pigeons* ; but if it merely mean two things of the same nature taken together, it is feminine, as *une couple de perdrix*, a brace of partridges.

Délíce is masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural ; but preceded by *de* it is of either gender : *un de mes délices*, one of my delights ; *une de mes délices*.

Foudre, thunderbolt, is only feminine when it means lightning. *Il va comme la foudre*, he goes like lightning. These are mere grammatical irregularities.

Couleur is feminine, unless the name of a colour follow, as *le couleur de rose*. Placed after a noun it is used adjectively : *un ruban couleur de citron*, pale yellow.

Œuvre is feminine, unless it means the philosopher's stone, *le grand œuvre*, or the works of an author or artist : as *c'est le premier œuvre de ce musicien*, this is the first work of that musician ; but if *œuvre* is used in the plural it is feminine : *ses œuvres seront bientôt imprimées*, his works will soon be printed.

Gens presents peculiar difficulties. It is feminine for all words preceding it, masculine for all that follow, as *les vieilles gens sont vite fatigués*, old people are soon tired.

But when the adjective *tout* precedes it without any other qua-

lyfing word, *tout* remains masculine: *tous les gens raisonnables*, all reasonable people; and if the adjective immediately preceding *gens* end in the masculine in *e muet*, ALL words qualifying *gens* are masculine: *les vrais honnêtes gens*, truly honest people; *tous les braves gens*, all good people.

Bonnes et vieilles gens, good old folks, is correct, because *bonnes* is connected with *vieilles* by a conjunction, and both adjectives have a feminine termination; but we write *bons et honnêtes gens*, because *honnête* being an adjective of the common gender prevents *bon* from taking the feminine ending. *TOUTES les bonnes gens* is feminine, because *bonne* is so.

Quelque chose is feminine when it means *whatever*; meaning *whatever*, it must be followed by the subjunctive: *quelque chose que vous ayez promise, donnez-la*, whatever you have promised, give. In all other cases it is masculine.

A large class of nouns have entirely different words for the masculine and feminine:

As *neveu*, nephew, *nièce*; *oncle*, uncle; *tante*, aunt. Some distinguish their gender by different suffixes, as *abbé*, an ecclesiastic; *abbesse*, abbess. This ending appears in some English nouns, and comes from the Latin *issa*.

Names of towns are generally masculine, unless they were feminine in Latin.

If *tout* precedes the name of a town, both it and any adjective qualifying that town are masculine: *tout Lisbonne fut détruit*, all Lisbon was destroyed. In doubtful cases, there being no absolute rule for the genders of towns, *ville*, town, is used: *la ville de Cahors fut prise par Henri Quatre*, Cahors was taken by Henri Quatre.

Those nouns which are called in English grammar **Compound Nouns**, as cornfield, are translated into French by inverting the nouns and putting a preposition between them: cornfield, *champ de blé*, field of corn.

The preposition *de*, when thus used, implies material, possession, or origin. *Biens d'église*, church lands; *vin de Bordeaux*, Bordeaux wine. *À* implies use, agency: *une salle à manger*, dining-room; *pot au lait*, milk-jug.

Here a question occurs to which it is impossible to give a thoroughly satisfactory answer, viz. when the preposition *à* should

be used, and when the partitive article *au, à la*. Sometimes there is a shade of difference according as one or the other is used. *Pot à lait* means a jug for milk; *pot au lait* means a milk-jug, and implies that it is usually full of milk. The gender of these nouns is settled by the first word in the compound: *un vase à fleurs*, a flower-vase.

25. Feminine nouns are generally formed by adding e mute to the masculine, as *marchand*, merchant, *marchande*. Where the Latins made their feminine in *a*, as *filia*, daughter, the French language makes it *e*, as *fille*.

This aversion to words ending in *a* is constant; *Maria* becomes *Marie*; *porta*, door, *porte*.

When the masculine sound ends in a nasal *n*, as *baron*, this *n* is doubled, and *e* mute is added: *baronne*, baroness.

Nouns in *f* change this letter into *e*, and add *e*: *veuf*, widower, *veuve*.

Nouns ending in *eur* generally change it into *euse* in the feminine, as *trompeur*, deceiver, *trompeuse*. But those coming from Latin words ending in *tor* change *eur* into *rice*, as *acteur*, actor, *actrice*; *pécheur*, sinner, gives *pécheresse*; and *chasseur*, hunter, *chasseresse*, a word only used in poetry.

Exercise on Gender.

<i>Ils sont</i> , they are.	<i>Voyez-vous</i> , do you see?
<i>Vous avez</i> , you have.	<i>Voici</i> , here is, here are.
<i>Donnez-moi</i> , give me.	<i>Le château</i> , the castle, large country house.
<i>Voyez</i> , see, look at.	<i>Dans</i> , in.

The north wind in the bramble. You have the sepia. Give me the chair. Here is the cage. Do you see the plum? They are old people. The people are old. See the forest. Give me the sepia. Here is the pie. Look at the castle. Give me the key and the spoon. They are in the nave. It is the first book. In the Alps. In the treaty.

Number of Nouns.

26. There are two numbers in French as in English, the Singular and the Plural.

The plural form is derived from the singular, by making some change in it, usually by adding *s*.

The reason of this is that by the fourteenth century out of the six Latin cases only one survived in French, namely the accusative. The mark of the accusative plural was *s*, *lupos*, *muros*; and this *s* became the mark of the plural not only in French, but in English, when spoken by Norman lips.

Words, however, which end in *s* in the singular, as *fils*, son; in *x*, as *voix*, voice; or in *z*, as *nez*; do not change in the plural, and there are seven nouns ending in *ou* which take *x* when plural.

These are *bijou*, jewel; *caillou*, pebble; *chou*, cabbage; *genou*, knee; *hibou*, owl; *joujou*, plaything; *pou*, louse; and nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, as *neveu*, nephew, *neveux*, do the same.

The reason of this is that in the Middle Ages these letters were felt to be so nearly related that little distinction was made between them, especially in the plural, where *s* was always silent, and when later fixed rules were observed, some nouns kept the *x*.

Most nouns ending in *al* make their plural by changing *al* into *aux*, as *animal*, *animaux*.

Old French softened *l* into *au*; *chastel*, castle, became *château*; *martel*, hammer, *marteau*; thus the plural *chastels* became *châteaux*, *mal*, evil, *maux*.

These take *s* in the plural: *bal*, ball; *carnaval*; *chacal*, jackal; *aval*, up stream; *cal*, suture; *cantal*, Auvergne cheese; as do nouns in *ail*, except *bail*, lease; *corail*, coral; *émail*, enamel; *soupirail*, air-hole; *travail*, work; *ventail*, leaf of a door; *vitrail*, stained-glass window; which make their plural in *aux*.

27. The following have two plurals, with a different meaning:—

Aïeul, grandfather, *aïeuls*, grandfathers, *aïeux*, ancestors.

Ciel, sky, heaven; *ciels*, skies in painting, testers of beds, climates; *cieux*, skies, heaven.

Œil, eye; *œils*, used only in compound words, as *œils de bœuf*, oval windows; *yeux*, eyes, holes in bread, &c.

Ail, garlic; *aïls*, in botany, different kinds of garlic; *aule*, garlics.

Travail, work; a machine to fasten a horse while it is shod; state reports, *travaux*; *travaux*, works.

It will be noticed that, in the irregular plural, the noun generally has the same meaning as in the singular.

28. Names of metals have no plural, unless when regarded as productions of a country which have some special qualities :

As les fers d'Angleterre, English iron.

Abstract nouns are always singular, as la bonté, goodness.

In such a sentence as *merci de toutes vos bontés*, thanks for all your kindness, *bonté* ceases to be an abstract noun, and therefore takes a plural.

Adjectives and adverbs used as nouns are always singular.

Le livre de M. Cousin s'appelle le Vrai, le Beau et le Bien, M. Cousin's book is called the True, the Beautiful and the Good.

Some nouns are never used in the singular :

As les mouchettes, snuffers; *les mœurs*, customs; *les fiançailles*, betrothal.

Words taken from foreign languages do not take the mark of the plural, as *des veto*, except a few which have become naturalized, as *des albums*.

Proper nouns remain unchanged in the plural ; as

Les deux Marguerite, the two Margarets, unless they denote dynasties, as *les Bourbons*, or great historical families, as *les Guises*, or when used as common nouns, as *les Pascals sont rares*, i.e. men like Pascal are rare.

In the same way, if proper nouns are used to denote literary or artistic works, or different parts of a country, they take a plural; ex. :

Les Greuzes sont très recherchés, paintings by Greuze are much sought after; *les deux Siciles*, the two Sicilies; *achetez-moi deux Homères*, buy me two copies of Homer.

Compound nouns, such as *contrefaçon*, piracy, make their plural like common nouns.

But if the compound is made up of a noun and a verb, separated by a hyphen, as *casse-noisettes*, nutcrackers, or if part of the compound is joined to the other by a preposition, the verb or the last noun remains unchanged: ex. *des chefs-d'œuvre*, masterpieces.

Sometimes the sense (which must be the chief guide as to the plurals of compound nouns) plainly requires that one or more parts of them be singular: ex. *des passe-partout*, master-keys.

The name *passe-partout* means a thing enabling the owner to pass everywhere, but nouns and adjectives alone can take a plural, and the verb and adverb which compose this word are invariable. *Pied-à-terre* implies a temporary resting-place, where the foot as it were has scarcely time to touch the ground; therefore the plural is *des pieds-à-terre*, *terre* remaining unaltered. *Un va-nu-pieds*, barefooted vagabond, can obviously never be singular in form.

29. When a preposition is understood, but not expressed, as in *Hôtel-Dieu*, hospital, literally, House of God, or when one of the words clearly conveys no idea of plurality, part only of the compound is inflected, *des Hôtels-Dieu*.

A compound formed of a noun and adjective, as *beau-frère*, brother-in-law, inflects both:

As *des beaux-frères*; *un coffre-fort*, strong-box, safe, *des coffres-forts*; *un chef-lieu*, chief town, *des chefs-lieux*.

In nouns composed of two words, one of which is no longer used by itself, as *loup-garou*, wehrwolf, both take the mark of the plural.

The word *garde* requires special notice. When it means not a person but a thing, it is invariable, as *des garde-manger*, meat-safes; *garde-chasse* is sometimes written *gardes-chasse*, as if it meant keepers of the chase (gamekeepers); sometimes, by writers who consider *garde* to be a verb in this word, and therefore, as we have said above, invariable, as *des garde-chasses*. Littré considers *garde-chasse* invariable, notwithstanding the opinion of the Academy; it is permissible to use either.

Exercises on Number.

<i>Le</i> , the, sing. masc.	<i>Le piano</i> , the piano.
<i>La</i> — — fem.	<i>La chaise</i> , the chair.
<i>Les</i> — plural, both genders.	<i>Les prunes</i> , the plums.

The grammars. The pianos. The chairs. The brambles. The voices. The playthings. The hammers. The leases. The grand-fathers and the ancestors. The state reports. The two Emilies. Macaulays are rare (*rare*s). Two masterpieces. The gamekeepers. The Stuarts. The plums.

CASE.

30. French nouns are inflected as to gender and number, but not as to case.

By inflection is meant changes in the ending of the noun which show its gender and number. **Case** is a term unknown to French grammar, but may be used here, as resuming this section. The word *case* (Latin, *casus*) means *a falling*. The first people who studied grammar as a science were the Greeks. It was shaped in the schools of Greek philosophers, and the first grammar written to teach a language to foreigners was that of Dionysius Thrax (or the Thracian), who settled at Rome about eighty years B.C. and composed a Greek grammar, still in existence, for the use of his Roman pupils. He found the terms and framework of grammar ready to his hand, but had to put them into a shape for teaching those to whom Greek was a foreign tongue, and the grammatical terms used by him passed into Latin, and thence into all civilized languages. It was, however, the Latins, not the Greeks, who gave the term **Case** its actual meaning; the Greeks, when they spoke of 'πρῶσις,' a falling, used it as a term of philosophy, with which our *case* has nothing to do. The Latins called the nominative case the

Upright case, regarding it as an upright line, from which the other cases fell away at different angles. Case may be explained as '*the form in which a noun or pronoun is used in order to show the relation which it holds to some other word in the sentence.*'

English nouns are inflected in the possessive case, which ends with an apostrophe followed by *s*, or an apostrophe alone, as, *the child's father*; *the ladies' school*. This case shows that there is a close relationship between the noun in that case, and some other nouns following it. Whose father? The child's. Whose school? That of the ladies.

In French relations of case are expressed by prepositions.

The possessive is usually rendered by *de*: ex. *le chat de Cécile*, Cecily's cat, i.e. the cat of Cecily.

But after the verb *être*, to be, used in the sense of *to belong*, the possessive case is rendered by *à*: *ce chat est à Émilie*, this cat belongs to Emily.

Sometimes the thing possessed is understood, instead of being expressed, both in French and English. *C'est à moi*, it is mine, something already said making clear what is meant.

If the word *house* is understood, as in 'I live at my guardian's,' the preposition *chez* must be used. *Je demeure chez mon tuteur*. This word comes from the Latin *casa*, house.

Case.

Non, no.

Le libraire, the bookseller.

À lui, his (belonging to him).

Le thème, the exercise, theme.

Gabrielle's sepia. It is Marie's. No, it is mine. It is his. I live at the bookseller's. The pie is Alfred's. The forest is Raymond's. Arthur's theme. The grammar is mine. Look at Alfred's book. You have Charles's chair. Here is Gabrielle's piano. Give me Raymond's hammer. Do you see Arthur's playthings? The colonel's country-house. The pages of the sermon. The cage is his.

ARTICLE.

31. THE meaning of **Article** was originally *a joint* or *socket*, and the name was applied by Greek grammarians to those parts of speech which they looked on as the joints of a sentence. Gradually this name of Article became confined to certain words which have no independent existence, that is, mean nothing unless joined to some noun which they single out from others.

Classical Latin had no Article; but when the inflexions of cases were dropped, the need of one made itself felt, and the pronoun *ille* was used. The accusative of *ille* became *illom*, which gradually changed into *illo*, *lo*, and at last *le*, in which shape we have it now. The feminine accusative *illam* became *la*, and the plural *illos*, *les*, for both genders.

<i>Le père</i>	} <i>Les</i> , for the plural of both genders.	{ The father. The mother.
<i>La mère</i>		

In old French the Article had two cases, the nominative and accusative; but only one has survived; and the cases are formed by means of the prepositions *de* and *à*, which in the masculine singular and in the plural have become united with the article, and thus contracted into—

Du, de la, des, of the.

Au, à la, aux, to the.

Before a *vowel* or *h mute* the vowel in *le* and *la* is elided: ex. *l'abricot*, the apricot; *l'habit*, the coat; *l'actrice*, the actress; *l'héroïne*. If *du* or *au* precede a *vowel* or an *h mute* they are written *de l'*, *à l'*: ex. *de l'abricot*, *à l'habit*.

32. *Du, de la, des* also have the meaning of *some*, and are known as the **partitive article**, because they are used when a certain quantity of a thing is to be expressed. Ex. *du miel*, some honey; *de la farine*, some flour; *des plumes*, some pens.

These examples show that the article agrees in gender and number with its noun.

When a plural noun is taken in a general sense, as *heroes* and *heroines*, the noun must be preceded by *des*; ex. *des héros et des héroïnes*; *des pères et des mères*, fathers and mothers. If any special heroes and heroines, fathers and mothers, were meant, the definite article would be used both in French and English.

The definite article *le* is a determinative adjective, but the indefinite article *un, une*, is a quantitative adjective.

Un, une, comes from the Latin *unus, una*, one, and agrees with the noun in gender; ex. *un lion, une lionne*; *un garçon, une fille*.

The article must be repeated before every noun. In English we can say *the boy and girl*, but in French we must say *le garçon et la fille*; and even if two masculine nouns were used, as *le frère et le cousin*, or two feminine, as *la sœur et la bonne*, the sister and the maid, the article must come before each.

Exercises on the Article.

<i>Je vends</i> , I sell, am selling.	<i>Parlez-vous</i> , do you speak, are you speaking?
<i>Je vais</i> , I am going.	<i>Vendez-vous</i> , do you sell?
<i>Du miel</i> , the honey.	<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking.
<i>Un enfant</i> , a child.	

Are you selling flowers? I sell roses. Are you speaking of the sermon? Here is the coat. Do you speak to the child? I am speaking to the boys. Do you sell pens? Here is the servant. I am going to the Alps. Give me some honey.

ADJECTIVES.

33. THE word **Adjective** comes from the Latin *adjectivus*, able to be added to something. By Adjectives we mean words which modify or distinguish nouns.

The Latin grammar speaks of noun substantive and noun adjective, but French grammarians have unfortunately abandoned these accurate terms, and confine the word *nom*, noun, to noun substantives

Adjectives are divided into *qualitative*, *quantitative*, and *demonstrative*.

A qualitative adjective attaches a quality to a noun.

In the phrase, *un lis blanc*, a white lily, the word *white* is a qualifying adjective, telling us what the lily is. In *j'ai deux sœurs*, I have two sisters, *deux* is a quantitative adjective, telling the number of sisters. This class includes the indefinite article *un*, a or an, the cardinal numeral adjectives *un*, *deux*, &c.; but *cent*, hundred, *mille*, thousand, are nouns.

The **demonstrative** adjectives distinguish the particular object spoken of from all others of the same class denoted by the noun.

In *ce garçon est malade*, this boy is ill, *ce* is a demonstrative adjective, pointing out one particular boy from the rest.

To this class belong the definite article *le*, the, and the **pronominal adjectives**, comprising :

- a. THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.
- b. THE INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.
- c. THE DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS.
- d. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.
- e. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.
- f. THE REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.
- g. THE ORDINAL NUMERALS.

The above arrangement is according to the system followed by the best modern grammarians, though it does not accord with the French system. The pronouns are fully treated of further on.

As in Latin and English, adjectives are often used without the nouns which they qualify. Ex. *consolez les malheureux*, console the unhappy. Here *gens* is understood. *C'est un savant*, he is a learned man, *homme* being understood. Some words which are really adjectives are used as nouns, *les Italiens*, *les Provençaux*, inhabitants of Provence.

34. Adjectives have in French both gender and number, and must agree with the noun which they qualify.

Ex. *un grand garçon*, a tall boy ; *de grands garçons*, tall boys.

They follow the same rules for the plural as nouns (§ 26), usually taking *s*, as *le bon*, the good, *les bons* ; or, if ending in *al*, changing the last letter into *ux*, as, *loyal*, *loyaux*. There are several exceptions :

amical,	fatal,	glacial,	nasal,
colossal,	final,	initial,	natal,
ducal,	frugal,	matinal,	naval,
	théâtral.		

The above all take *s*, as also do the following, which are little used :

austral,	bancal,	boréal,	doctoral,
jovial,	labial,	lingual,	médial,
oval,	pascal,	pénal,	virginal.

35. Again, like nouns, adjectives usually make their feminine by adding *e* mute to the masculine.

Un ciel bleu, blue sky ; *une ceinture bleue*, a blue sash ; *des yeux bleus*, blue eyes ; *une femme loyale*, a loyal woman ; *des femmes loyales*, loyal women.

If an adjective ends in *e*, as *tranquille*, the feminine is the same as the masculine. *Un tigre féroce*, a fierce tiger ; *une tigresse féroce*, a fierce tigress.

The reason of this is that adjectives which had but one termination for these two genders in Latin, as *crudelis*, cruel, had but one in French. We find *grand'mère*, grandmother, in old French ; but grammarians of the fourteenth century, puzzled by such syntax as *un homme loial*, a loyal man ; *une femme loiale*, a loyal woman, gave these adjectives of one termination a feminine, and wrote *grande*, *oruelle*, *loyale*, &c. Some few, however, have kept the old form, and the apostrophe of *grand'route*, high-road, *grand'messe*, high mass, &c., was added in the seventeenth century, from a mistaken idea that the *e* had been dropped, and that this loss ought to be pointed out by an apostrophe.

Adjectives ending in *ais*, *as*, *eil*, *el*, *es*, *et*, *ien*, *on*, *os*, *ot*, *ul*, make their feminine in *asse*, *elle*, &c., doubling the last consonant, and adding *e*, as *gras*, fat, *grasse*.

Six, however, all of learned, not popular, origin, break this rule, and add *e* mute, without doubling the consonant, but taking an *accent grave* on the syllable before the last, as *complet*, *complète*. The other five are *concret*, concrete ; *discret*, discreet ; *inquiet*, uneasy ; *replet*, stout ; and *secret*, secret.

Beau, beautiful, from the old French *bel*, becomes *belle* in the feminine, and *beaux*, *belles*, in the plural. This form of *bel* is still preserved before a vowel or an *h* mute, as *un bel homme*, a fine-looking man; *un bel animal*, a fine animal. How *bel* became *beau* is explained by that tendency to soften *l* into *u* already spoken of. *Jumeau*, a twin; *nouveau*, new; *fou*, mad; *mon*, soft, flabby; *vieux*, old: all make their feminines in the same way: *jumelle*, *folle*, *vieille*, &c.

Another class change the last consonant of the masculine into another, adding *e* mute, as *jaloux*, *jalouse*, jealous; *bref*, *brève*. This change of *f* into *v* is familiar to ourselves in words such as *wife*, *wives*. Old French wrote *brefve*; but the *f* was soon dropped out, as *v* was felt to represent it.

Where an adjective ends in *x*, and makes its fem. in *esse*, as *roux*, *rousse*, red-haired; *faux*, *fausse*, false; we shall find that old French made the masculine end in *s*, *fauz*, &c.; the *ss* was added in the feminine to mark the hard sound with which it was to be pronounced. *Doux*, soft, gentle, makes *douce*.

The last consonant of the root of Latin adjectives is generally changed or lost in the masculine of French adjectives, but is retained in the feminine. The following is a list of the adjectives which form their feminines thus irregularly:

Masc.	Fem.
<i>actif</i> , active	<i>active</i> (Lat. <i>activus</i>)
<i>neuf</i> , new	<i>neuve</i> (Lat. <i>novus</i>)
<i>glorieux</i> , glorious	<i>glorieuse</i>
<i>amoureux</i> , amorous	<i>amoureuse</i>
<i>bref</i> , short, brief	<i>brève</i>
<i>doux</i> , soft, gentle	<i>douce</i>
<i>roux</i> , red-haired	<i>rousse</i>
<i>bas</i> , low	<i>basse</i>
<i>épais</i> , thick	<i>épaisse</i>
<i>express</i> , express	<i>expresse</i>
<i>profes</i> , a professed monk or nun	<i>professe</i>
<i>gros</i> , large	<i>grosse</i>
<i>nul</i> , none	<i>nulle</i>
<i>absous</i> , absolved	<i>absoute</i>
<i>bénin</i> , blessed	<i>bénigne</i>
<i>cot</i> , quiet	<i>cotte</i>
<i>dissous</i> , dissolved	<i>dissoute</i>
<i>favori</i> , favourite	<i>favorite</i>
<i>tiers</i> , a third	<i>tierce</i>

Some adjectives in *e hard* make their feminine in *que*, as *public*, *publique*.

Those ending in *g* take *ue*, as *long*, *longue*; this again is explained by the need to preserve a certain sound. Had *e mute* been added without *gu* to *public*, we should have had *publice*, or to *long*, without *u*, we should have had *longe*, instead of *longue*. *Grec*, Greek, makes *Grecque*, but this is an irregularity. *Hebraïque*, Hebrew, is both masculine and feminine; *Hébreu*, *Hébreue*, being used to express a Jew or Jewess.

Tout, all, makes *tous* and *toutes*, fem.

Adjectives ending in *c*, as *sec*, dry; *blanc*, white; make their feminine by adding *h* and *e mute*, *sèche*, *blanche*.

Exercise on Gender of Adjectives.

Note.—Adjectives of shape and colour come *after* nouns.

Le ruban, the ribbon.

Bleu, blue.

Ronde, round.

Agreeable, agreeable.

C'est, it (or this) is.

Court, short.

Un élève, a pupil.

La prière, the prayer.

A blue ribbon. White ribbons. A round table (f.). A fierce lion. The father and the mother are agreeable. Here is a beautiful book and a beautiful apricot. Do you see her twin sister? Hortense is beautiful. A long sermon. It is a short prayer. A blue robe (f.). A soft sash. A new book. A new sash. Long ribbons. It is a Greek (f.). All the books. All the slates. The brother and sister are active. Edgar is the favourite. Marion is the favourite pupil.

Comparison of Adjectives.

36. English adjectives can be compared in two ways, namely, by inflecting the positive degree with *er* and *est*, as *white*, *whiter*, *whitest*, or by using *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*, to express the comparative and superlative degrees. In French the latter mode is almost invariably used, as *blanc*, *plus blanc*, *le plus blanc*, or *blanc*, *moins blanc*, *le moins blanc*.

37. The comparative may be used to express equality, inferiority, and superiority.

1. THE COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY is made by using *aussi*.

Ex. *Antoine est aussi habile que vous*, Antony is as skilful as you.

In a negative phrase *si* may replace *aussi*. *Il n'est pas si habile que son frère*, he is not so skilful as his brother.

2. INFERIORITY is expressed by *moins*, less.

Sa maison est moins belle (or *n'est pas si belle*) *que la mienne*, his house is less beautiful than mine. *Son chien est moins fort que le vôtre*, his dog is less strong than yours.

3. The word SUPERLATIVE, which comes from the Latin *superlatus*, lifting up above, implies that objects to which it is applied are raised above some others.

There are two kinds of Superlative, the Relative and the Absolute.

The first implies that the quality spoken of exists in a very high, or in the highest degree, as compared with it in some other case. It is formed by placing the definite article or a possessive pronoun before the adjective.

Ex. *voilà l'enfant le plus gentil que je connaisse*, it is the nicest child that I know. Here the child thus praised is compared with all the other children of my acquaintance. *C'est mon plus beau tableau*, it is my finest picture; that is, the finest of all the pictures which I possess. *Voici le moins sage de mes élèves*, here is the least good of my pupils.

The Superlative Absolute expresses some quality in a very high degree, without comparing the possessor with anything, and is expressed by using the adverbs *bien*, *très*, *fort*, &c.

Elle est très belle, she is very beautiful. *Ce tyran était excessivement cruel*, this tyrant was excessively cruel.

There are four adjectives which make their comparison irregularly, both in Latin and French. Two of these are also irregular in English.

Bon, good; *meilleur*, better; *le meilleur*, the best.

Mauvais, bad; *pire*, worse; *le pire*, the worst; or, regularly declined, *plus mauvais*; *le plus mauvais*.

Petit, small; *moindre*, less; *le moindre*, least. *Minime* is sometimes used in the superlative absolute: *son revenu est minime*, his income is extremely small. *Petit* can also be declined regularly, with *plus* and *le plus*.

Bas, low; *inférieur*, *infime*. Ex. *une position infime*, a very low position.

These adjectives must be carefully distinguished from the adverbs formed from them; ex. *bien*, well; *mieux*, *le mieux*; *mal*, badly; *pis*, *le pis*; *peu*, little; *moins*, *le moins*. *Mal* is also declined.

When the superlative follows its noun, the article must be repeated; ex. *le cheval le plus fougueux*, the most fiery horse.

38. After a comparative than is rendered in three ways:

(1) By QUE.

Ex. *ils sont plus beaux que leurs cousins*, they are handsomer than their cousins.

(2) By QUE DE. When there is a comparison between nouns or infinitives.

As *il a plus de bonté que de prudence*, he is more kind than prudent.

(3) By DE before a numeral expression.

As *il a plus de dix lapins*, he has more than ten rabbits. *C'est plus d'à moitié gâté*, it is more than half spoilt.

39. As, before the second term of comparison, is rendered by *que* and *que de*.

(1) QUE: *Il est aussi spirituel qu'elle*, he is as clever as she.

(2) QUE DE, when the comparison is between nouns or infinitives: ex. *ils ont autant de frères que de sœurs*, they have as many brothers as sisters. *Ils aiment mieux flâner que de travailler*, they like better to dawdle than to work.

40. Plus, used to express a comparative, must be repeated before every adjective.

As *vous êtes plus habile et plus adroit que moi*, you are more skilful and adroit than I.

When an adjective in the superlative is preceded by a possessive adjective, the definite article is of course omitted; ex. *mon plus grand souci*, my greatest anxiety.

41. In after the superlative is rendered by *de*.

Ex. *la plus jolie fille de France*, the prettiest girl in France.

A few words make their superlatives in *issime*, but these have taken a playful meaning.

As *richissime*, very rich; *grandissime*, very large; *clarissime*, very bright. This ending comes from the Latin *issimus*, and was imported through Italians; but the fact that they break the law of tonic accent, which would have made them *grandisme*, *clarisme*, &c., shows that in their present shape they are modern words.

Exercise on Comparison of Adjectives.

Mon, ma, my (mas. and fem.), *mes*, plur.

La fleur, the flower.

Le garçon, the boy.

Le parfum, scent.

J'ai, I have.

Le lis, the lily.

La fille, the girl,

daughter.

The girl is nicer than the boy. It is my finest flower. This is the least fine of my lilies. Charles is the worst of my pupils. Alfred is the best of the boys. Here is a white lily, it is whiter than a white rose. It has more beauty than scent. I have more than six roses. You are bigger than your twin. Charles is as big as Alfred. The girls are more skilful and more active than you.

Numeral Adjectives.

42. These adjectives denote number (Lat. *numerus*), or order. The first class are known as **Cardinal Numeral Adjectives**, because they are the hinges (*cardo*, hinge) on which calculations turn; the second, **Ordinal Numeral Adjectives**, because they mark order and rank.

43. **Cardinal Numeral Adjectives.**—*Quantitative Adjectives*.

The **CARDINAL NUMERAL ADJECTIVES** up to ten are, *un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix*.

From ten to twenty, *onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze, seize, dix-sept, dix-huit, dix-neuf, vingt*.

The *ze* represents *dix* (Lat. *decem*), as *teen* in English does ten; *onze* therefore *un-dix, douze, deux-dix, &c.* *Dix* re-appears in its own shape in *dix-sept, &c.*

From twenty to sixty we have *vingt et un*, *vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, &c.; *trente*, *trente et un*, *trente-deux*, &c.; *quarante*, *quarante et un*, *quarante-deux*, &c.; *cinquante*, *cinquante et un*, *cinquante-deux*, &c.; *soixante*, &c. From seventy to a hundred, *soixante-dix*, *soixante-onze*, *soixante-douze*, &c. *Quatre-vingts*, *quatre-vingt-un*, *quatre-vingt-deux*, &c. *Quatre-vingt-dix*, *quatre-vingt-onze*, *quatre-vingt-douze*, &c.

In some parts of France, Switzerland, and Belgium, the simpler forms of *septante* (70), *octante* (80), *nonante* (90), are often used, but this is not classical French. The cumbrous compounds of *quatre-vingt-dix*, &c., are a remnant of the manner in which the Gauls counted, and have remained in French, although after the Roman conquest the Gauls began to use the Latin method of enumeration.

The Arabs, who have left their mark deeply on arithmetic, have given to the French numerals the word *zéro*, nought, from *çifron*, a cipher.

Vingt and **cent** take *s* when multiplied by a number and not followed by another.

Ex. *quatre-vingts élèves*, *trois cents soldats*; but, *il y a deux cent trois moutons*, there are 203 sheep.

The conjunction *and*, and the indefinite article *a*, are suppressed when they precede or follow *cent* and *mille*.

Ex. *cent deux échantillons*, 102 specimens; *mille pardons*, a thousand pardons.

Mille never takes the plural *s*. *Mil* should be used in speaking of dates relating to the Christian era. Ex. *mil huit cent*. But in speaking of dates preceding the Christian era, *mille* is used.

In cases such as *verset quatre-vingt*, verse 80; *l'an deux cent*, the year 200; *vingt* and *cent* are invariable, because they stand for *quatre-vingtième*, 80th, and *deux-centième*, 200th.

The conjunction *et* should be inserted in *vingt et un*, *trente et un*, &c., but not in *vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, &c.

Un, in *vingt et un*, *trente et un*, &c., agrees with its noun in gender. Ex. *trente et une femmes*, thirty-one women.

44. Ordinal Numeral Adjectives.—*Demonstrative Adjectives.*

The ORDINAL NUMERAL ADJECTIVES are formed from the cardinal numerals by adding *ième* (from the Latin *esimus*), and dropping *e* mute from those that end in that letter.

Neuf changes *f* into *v*. *Premier*, first, and *second* are exceptions, but *troisième*, *quatrième*, &c., are regular.

Premier and *second* agree with their noun, as *la première de sa classe*, the first of her class.

Premier and *second* are used in speaking of the succession of sovereigns, as *Charles premier*. In all other cases the cardinal numbers must be used, as *Louis Quatorze*. *Deux*, however, is more often employed than *second*.

Contrary to English custom, the **days of the month** require *cardinal numbers*, as *le sept Janvier*, the 7th of January, *day* being understood.

It is also omitted in *aujourd'hui en huit*, this day week; and *aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight. *Huit jours*, *quinze jours*, represent respectively a week and a fortnight in French.

Huitaine, *dizaine*, *douzaine*, *quinzaine*, *vingtaine*, *trentaine*, *quarantaine*, whence *quarantine*, a seclusion of forty days, are feminine nouns; followed by *de* they often take the place of numerals. Ex. *une trentaine de prisonniers*, some thirty prisoners.

Prime, first, is now only found in certain locutions, as *de prime abord*, at first sight.

Tiers, third, remains in *Tiers État*, the third Estate of the realm, the Commons, and *un tiers*, a third person.

Quart appears in connection with *fièvre quart*, quartan ague, and *quint* with *Charles Quint*, Charles V., Emperor of Germany and King of Spain. This *quint*, however, probably comes from the Spanish *quinto*, fifth, not old French, as the French Kings, Louis V. and Charles V., are known as *Louis Cinq*, *Charles Cinq*. Pope Sixtus V. is also called *Sixte Quint*.

45. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

In speaking of the time of day, we say, *midi dix*, ten minutes past twelve; it would be incorrect to say *douze heures* for noon; and for twelve o'clock at night, *minuit* must be used. In *midi dix*; *trois*

heures vingt, twenty minutes past three, *minutes* are understood. Every other day is, *de deux jours l'un*, or *tous les deux jours*.

The last consonant of *cinq*, *six*, *sept*, *huit*, *neuf*, *dix*, is pronounced before (a) a vowel or an *h* mute; (b) when the cardinal number is used instead of the ordinal, as *le huit Décembre*; (c) at the end of a sentence; ex. *j'en ai neuf*. The *f* of *neuf* before a vowel or *h* mute sounds like *v*, *neuv*.

The article before *once* is not elided, *le once*; and when preceded by *les*, the *s* is not sounded.

Million; *millier* (1,000 lbs., or some large indefinite sum) are nouns, and must be followed by the preposition *de*; ex. *un millier de café*, 1,000 lbs. of coffee. *Il y a des milliers de rats*, there are myriads of rats.

Exercise on Numeral Adjectives.

Le soldat, soldier.

Dans, in.

Le fer, iron.

Venez, come.

Cueillez, gather.

Twenty-one pictures. Verse seventy-two. A.D. 1784. 264 B.C. Here are eighty-one francs. I have 300 books. 1021 soldiers. 1,000 lbs. of iron. The first rose. Louis First. Charles Eighth. The 6th of January. In a week. After (*après*) a fortnight. Some forty houses. A dozen roses. It is midnight. It is noon. No, it is ten minutes past twelve. A quarter to four. Come every other day. Gather the third part of these roses. Give me the twentieth volume. The ninety-eighth house.

Demonstrative Adjectives.

46. **Demonstrative Adjectives** are used to point out the person or thing spoken of, and agree in number and gender with their noun.

Masc.

Fem.

Sing. *ce*, *cet* (before a vowel or *h* mute). *cette*, *this* or *that*.

Plur. *ces*.

ces, *these* or *those*.

These adjectives must always be followed by a noun. Ex. *ce chat*, this cat; *cet if*, this yew-tree; *ces bonnets*, these caps.

To point out with greater clearness whether a person or thing be near or distant, *ci*, from *ici*, here, and *là*, there, are used. Ex. *ce crayon-ci*, this pencil; *cette ardoise-là*, that slate. This locution is found in vulgar English; ex. *this here basket*.

Ce must be repeated before every noun and adjective, unless two or more adjectives qualify the same substantive. Ex. *cette grande et malheureuse nation*, this great and unhappy nation. But, *ces anciens et ces nouveaux amis*, these old and new friends.

This adjective must not be mistaken for the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, which never stands before a noun.

Exercise on Demonstrative Adjectives.

Regardez, look at.

Un arbre, a tree.

Voulez-vous? do you wish for?

Vert, green.

Give me that lily. Look at those flowers. Gather this orange and that rose. Look at that tree; that yew is dark green. Do you wish for this book? Give me that cap. This child is good. That sash is blue.

Possessive Adjectives.

47. Possessive adjectives stand before their noun, and agree with it in gender and number; in English they agree with the possessor.

Ex. *elle soigne son père et ses sœurs*, she takes care of her father and sisters. This example also shows that they must be repeated before each noun.

The possessive adjectives are :

MASC.	FEM.	PLUR. (both genders).
mon (Lat. <i>meum</i>),	ma (Lat. <i>meam</i>),	mes (Lat. <i>meos</i>), <i>my</i>
ton	ta	tes <i>thy</i>
son	sa	ses <i>his, her, its</i>
notre (both genders)		nos <i>our</i>
votre " "		vos <i>your</i>
leur " "		leurs <i>their</i>

Up to the end of the fourteenth century the *féminines* *ma, ta, sa*, were used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; at that time writers began to use the masculine *mon, ton, son*,

before such nouns, and by the fifteenth century this became a fixed custom. Old French had *m'amie*, but this, though logically correct, would now be regarded as a mistake, and *mon amie*, *mon héroïne*, &c., would be held correct. *Ma mie*, my beloved, is a locution still surviving which reminds us that it was once *m'amie*.

Exercise on Possessive Adjectives.

La plume, the pen.

Où est ? where is ?

Trouvez, find.

A-t-il ? has he ?

Give me my book and my pen. Here are your pens. Do you see my children ? Where is his spoon ? Here is her piano. Give them their atlas. Find our grammars. Where are their play-things ? Has he his sermons ? You have your exercises. Where are thy chairs ? Have you her lease ? Here are thy flowers.

Indefinite Adjectives.

48. The Indefinite Adjectives imply that the noun is used in a general sense. There are twelve of them, viz. :—

- (a) One agreeing with its noun in gender ;
- (b) Five, in both gender and number ;
- (c) Five, which end in *e*, agreeing only in number ;
- (d) And one is invariable.

(a) **Aucun** is the one Indefinite Adjective which agrees with the noun in gender only (Lat. *aliquis* ; old Fr. *alque*). It means both *any* and *none*.

Ex. *un malheur instruit mieux qu'aucune remontrance*, a misfortune teaches better than any remonstrance ; *je ne connais aucun de ses ouvrages*, I do not know any of his works ; *aucun, que je sache*, none, that I know of. The earliest meaning was always affirmative, but the negative one is now the commoner. *Aucun*, meaning none, requires *no* : *je n'ai aucun de vos livres*, I have none of your books ; unless it stands alone, as in answer to a question, *aucun*, none.

(b) The following are the five which agree with the noun in both gender and number :—

Certain (Lat. *certus*) is an indefinite adjective when it stands before its noun, and answers to *quelque*. Ex. *certaines gens*, certain people. But when it follows, and means

sure, or assured, it is usually a qualifying adjective, as *une mort certaine*, certain death.

Maint is used in poetry and conversation rather than in prose composition. It comes from the German *manch*, many. Ex. *maint homme*, many a man; *maintes fois*, many times.

Nul, feminine *nulle* (Lat. *nullus*), none. Ex. *nul plaisir sans mélange*, no pleasure without mixture. Unlike *aucun*, *nul* cannot stand alone in answer to a question.

Tel, feminine *telle* (Lat. *talis*), such. Ex. *un tel père*, such a father. *De telles bêtises*, such blunders.

Tout (Lat. *totus*), all, every. Ex. *tout enfant*, every child. *Toute mère*, every mother.

When *all the, the whole of*, is expressed by *tout*, the definite article must also be inserted. Ex. *tout le monde*, everybody; *toutes les mères*, all mothers; *tous ces enfants*, all these children. The article must never stand *before tout*, as in *the whole strength*: this must run *toute la force*.

(c) The following are the five which agree with the noun in number only:—

Autre (Lat. *alter*), another, other. Ex. *j'ai les autres corbeilles*, I have the other baskets; *voici une autre dépêche*, here is another telegram.

Chaque (Lat. *quisque*), each. Ex. *chaque mari*, each husband.

N.B.—**Chacun**, *each one*, is a pronoun, and must never be used as an adjective.

Même, *the same*, became shortened from the Latin *metissimus*. Ex. *voilà les mêmes garçons*, there are the same boys. When it means *even, moreover, also*, it is an adverb and invariable: *nous devons même le fuir*, we must even flee from it.

Quelconque (Lat. *qualiscumque*), *whatever, some or other, any whatever*, always follows its noun. Ex. *un projet quelconque*, whatever plan; *deux lignes quelconques*, whatever two lines.

Quelque (Lat. *qualisque*), *some* : *quelques règles*, some rules.

(d) **Plusieurs** (Low Lat. *pluriores*), *several*, is the one which is invariable. Ex. *plusieurs vaches*, several cows; *plusieurs bœufs*, several oxen.

Exercise on Indefinite Adjectives.

Malheur, misfortune.

Sortir, to go out.

Avoir envie, to wish, have a mind to.

Grave, serious.

Cher, dear.

Have you any wish to go out? None. I have no wish to go out. Have you none of the books? None that I know of. Such mistakes are serious. Such pupils are rare. Such houses are dear. I have several tables. Give me all the telegrams. Everybody is here. Have you the other basket? Here is each pencil. Here is another misfortune. This is the whole house. Here are all the same people. Give me all. Every child is here.

49. Most of the indefinite adjectives may be employed without a noun, such as *nul*, *plusieurs*, *autre*, *aucun*, *certain*, *tel*, *tout*; they then become *indefinite pronouns*.

Ex. *nul n'est prophète dans son pays*, no one is a prophet in his own country. *Nul* here stands for *nul homme*, no man.

From the indefinite adjectives *chaque* and *quelque* joined to *un*, also an indefinite adjective, we get the indefinite pronouns *chacun*, each one, and *quelqu'un*, some one.

The other pronouns of this class are :

<i>autrui</i> , other people, others.	<i>l'un l'autre</i> , one another.
<i>on</i> , one, they, people.	<i>l'un et l'autre</i> , both.
<i>personne</i> , nobody.	<i>l'un ou l'autre</i> , either.
<i>quiconque</i> , whoever.	<i>ni l'un ni l'autre</i> , neither.

Autrui applies only to persons, and is invariable. Ex. *le bien d'autrui*, the property of another; *par soi-même on peut juger d'autrui*, by oneself one can judge others.

Chacun and **quelqu'un** take the same inflexions as *un*. Ex. *quelqu'une de vos amies est venue*, some one of your friends is come. *Chacune l'a répété*, each of them [females] has repeated it.

On, derived from the Latin *homo*, corresponds to the German pronoun *man*, and requires the verb in the third person singular, though it may often be translated by 'they,' or 'people,' as well as by 'it.' Ex. *on le dit*, they say so, or, people say so, or, it is said. The disjunctive pronoun answering to *on* is *soi*. *On* is only used as the subject of a sentence, while *soi* is used in phrases where *on* or some other indefinite pronoun is the subject. Ex. *chacun pense à soi*, each thinks of himself.

Personne (Latin *persona*) is a masculine pronoun, unless preceded by an article or adjective, in which case it is a feminine noun, and means a person. Ex. *la personne dont il s'agit*, the person in question. Without *ne* it means *anybody*. Ex. *sans que personne le sût*, without any one knowing. In answer to a question, such as *quelqu'un est-il venu?* has anybody come? *personne*, however, means *nobody*. Ex. *personne, que je sache*, nobody, that I know of. With *ne*, it means *no one*; ex. *je n'ai vu personne*, I have seen no one.

Personne, like *rien*, takes *de* before an adjective. Ex. *il n'y a personne de plus vilain*, there is no one uglier.

Aucun must never be used alone, instead of *personne*, in answer to a question.

Quiconque is used only for persons; it is invariable. Ex. *quiconque est soupçonneux provoque la trahison*, whoever is suspicious invites treason.

Rien is used without a negative after a comparative, a preposition, and in answers, as *ils ont moins que rien*, they have less than nothing; *vous devez le faire avec rien*, you will have to do with (almost) nothing; *que voulez-vous?* what do you want? *Rien*, nothing.

Tel, tels, telle, telles, is sometimes used without a noun; as *tel est pris qui croyait prendre*, many a one is taken in his own trap. When preceded by an article, it takes *un, une*. Ex. *une telle chanteuse*, such a singer. When used in such sentences as Mr. So-and-so, *Monsieur un tel*, it is taken substantively. We also find it in idiomatic sentences, as *je lui rends son paletot, tel quel*, I return him his great-coat, such as it was.

PRONOUNS.

50. A PRONOUN (Lat. *pro*, instead ; *nomen*, noun) is a word which is used instead of a noun.

Ex. *Adrien est ici, il vous appelle*, Adrian is here, he is calling you. *Il*, therefore, is a pronoun.

There are five sorts of pronouns : the *Personal*, the *Demonstrative*, *Possessive*, *Relative*, and *Indefinite*.

In English grammar *I*, *thou*, *we*, *you*, are usually called personal pronouns, and *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, demonstrative pronouns ; but French grammar includes all under the first head.

Personal Pronouns.

51. **Personal Pronouns** are either **conjunctive**, joined to the verb, preceding or following it as its subject or object, as *il le dit*, he says it ; or **disjunctive**, capable of being used in a part of the sentence not closely joined to the verb, as *il travaille pour toi*, he works for thee : *il* is here a conjunctive pronoun, and *toi* a disjunctive one, governed by a preposition.

52. The **Conjunctive Personal Pronouns** must agree with their noun in number and person. They are :

(1.) SINGULAR.

Je, *I* ; **tu**, *thou* ; **il**, *he*, *it* ; **elle**, *she*.

Nom.	je { (Lat. <i>ego</i> , old Fr. <i>io</i> , <i>jo</i>). }	tu.	il, elle.
Gen.	Wanting.	—	en, of him, her, it.
Dat.	{ me } to me.	te } to thee.	{ lui, se, soi, y, to him, her, it.
Acc.	me, me.	te, thee.	le, se, la, him, her, it.

(2.) PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> nous, <i>we.</i>	<i>vous, you.</i>	<i>ils, elles, they.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> wanting.	—	<i>en, — of them.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> nous, <i>to us.</i>	<i>vous, to you.</i>	<i>leur, se, y, to them.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> nous, <i>us.</i>	<i>vous, you.</i>	<i>eux, se, les, them.</i>

When the conjunctive pronouns are the subject of a verb, they must *precede* it, except when a question is asked. Ex. *vous écrivez*, you write; *écrit-il?* does he write? When they are the object of the verb, they must likewise precede it, except when the imperative mood is used affirmatively. Ex. *je le cherche*, I seek it; *cherchez-le*, seek it. But, *ne le cherchez pas*, do not seek it.

When a verb governs two conjunctive pronouns, *both* precede it, the dative standing first, as *il me l'offre*, he offers it to me; *vous l'offre-t-il?* does he offer it to you? except in the imperative; ex. *offrez-le-lui*, offer it to him. In the negative they precede the verb; ex. *ne le lui donnez pas*, do not give it to him.

Observe, that *lui, leur*, are exceptions to this rule, *following the accusative*. Ex. *je le leur offre*, I offer it to them; *il les lui rend*, he returns them to him.

Tu is used in speaking to relatives and familiar friends, or in speaking to inferiors. Ex. *viens-tu?* are you coming? *apporte-moi mon paletot*, bring me my great-coat.

Vous is used, as in English, to address one or more persons. In the first case the adjective remains in the singular, as *vous êtes fatigué*, you are tired. In the second it is plural, as *vous êtes prêts*, you are ready.

Le, la, les, must not be confounded with the definite article, which stands before nouns, not verbs. Ex. *où est le crayon?* *vous l'avez*, where is the pencil? you have it. The first *le* is an article, the second a pronoun.

Leur is a personal pronoun when it means *to them*, as *je leur parle*, I speak to them. Placed before a noun it means *their*, is a possessive adjective, and takes the plural *s*. Ex. *leur crayon*, their pencil; *leurs canifs*, their penknives.

En is a personal pronoun when it means of him, of her, of it, of them. Ex. *j'en parle*, I speak of him; *j'en suis aimé*, I am loved by her; *cette maladie ne pardonne pas*; *ils en mourront*, this illness does not spare; they will die of it.

When it means his, hers, its, theirs, it is a possessive pronoun. Ex. *j'ai vu cette ville ; les musées en sont fort beaux* : I have seen this town ; its picture-galleries are very fine.

Again, it constantly means *some, any, none* of it, of them, and stands instead of a noun already spoken of. Ex. *avez-vous de l'encre ?* have you any ink ? *j'en ai*, I have some ; *je n'en ai pas*, I have none. To say, *oui, j'ai*, yes, I have, would be altogether incorrect. *Ils avaient des tulipes, et ils en ont encore de très belles*, they had some tulips, and they still have some very fine ones. *Avez-vous du papier ? achetez-en*, have you any paper ? buy some.

It must not be confounded with the adverb *en* : *j'en viens*, I come thence ; nor with the preposition *en*, in. Ex. *il faut diminuer mon travail en prenant votre part*, you must diminish my work by taking your share.

Y is a pronoun when it means *to it, to these things*. Ex. *j'y ferai attention*, I will pay attention to it. It is an adverb when it means *there*. Ex. *j'y vais*, I am going there.

Observe that *me, te, se, le, la, les, leur*, always stand before the verb. Ex. *il me le donne*, he gives me it ; *vous leur parlez*, you speak to them. While *moi, toi, lui, soi, eux, elles*, follow the verb, and are usually governed by a preposition. Ex. *aller à lui, pas à moi*, go to him, not to me ; *il s'adresse toujours à vous*, he always applies to you.

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

It is needless to give a list of these, as they are the same as the personal pronouns (p. 38). The rules following explain their use.

53. The Disjunctive Personal Pronouns are only used as the *subject* of a verb when we wish to mark some distinction between two persons or things, or for emphasis.

Ex. *moi vous trahir !* I betray you ; *moi qui vous aime !* I who love you ! *eux, ils m'ont battu ; lui, il m'a loué ;* they have beaten me ; he has praised me.

To me, to thee, &c., are generally rendered by the dative *me, te, &c.*

Ex. *je vous avouerai tout*, I will confess all to you.

emphasis is to be laid on the dative, the sentence would be turned thus: *à vous j'avouerai tout*, to you I will confess all.

Possession is often indicated by a disjunctive pronoun with *à*.

Ex. *c'est à lui*, it is his; *ce chien est à moi*, this dog is mine. Myself, thyself, &c., are rendered by *moi-même*, *toi-même*, *lui-même*, *elle-même*, *nous-mêmes*, *vous-mêmes*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes*, *soi-même*, oneself, himself, herself; *c'est moi-même*, it is I myself.

Se is a reflexive personal pronoun, with *soi* for its disjunctive. It is used only for the third person, and is invariable. It is only used when the subject of the verb is *on*, *tout le monde*, *chacun*, or after an impersonal verb. Ex. *on ne doit jamais se louer*, one must never praise oneself; *il ne faut pas trop parler de soi*, one must not speak too much of oneself.

In English we say, It is I, It is they, &c., but in French the disjunctive pronouns are used: ex. *c'est moi*, *ce sont eux*. *Qui est-là? Moi*. Who is there? I. Here *c'est* is understood.

The disjunctive pronouns also follow prepositions: *il vient avec moi*, he comes with me; *il parle contre lui*, he speaks against him.

These pronouns are also used instead of *je*, *tu*, *il*, &c. When a verb has several subjects, all pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, the verb is then preceded by what is called a **resuming pronoun**, which gathers up all the subjects. Ex. *notre ami et moi*, *nous partons*, your friend and I are setting out; *Hélène et vous*, *vous devez venir*, Helen and you ought to come; *lui et toi*, *vous lambinez toujours*, he and you always dawdle. There is a little likeness to this construction in the turn sometimes given to a sentence for emphasis in English: ex. *you and he are always dawdling, both of you*.

The resuming pronoun is put in the first person, if there be one in the sentence; as, *moi et le jardinier*, *nous arrosons les parterres*, I and the gardener water the flower-beds. It is evident that *we* must be used, *we water*. *Toi et ma tante*, *vous êtes venues*, you and my aunt are come, *you are come*.

The resuming pronoun is not used after *ni*: *ni vous ni moi ne l'avons*, neither you nor I have it.

Exercise on Personal Pronouns.

I.

Le couteau, the knife.*La fourchette*, the fork.*Parlez*, speak.*Aussi*, also.*Je rends*, I return (something). *Vous rendez*, you return.

I seek the cage. Thou hast the grammar. Who has it? She has it. She offers me a white flower. We return the history. They offer the atlas. I return you the book. Give me the knife. Give him the basket. Give them to her. Speak to me. Have you any roses? Give me some. I have some. I have a knife, and you have one also. You have their forks. Bring me their pencil. Return it to them. He returns them to us. You speak to her. Have you any roses? Gather some. He has a child and his sister has four. I have none. Have you any coffee? Buy some. They had some roses and I had some also.

II.

Aller à, to go to.*Partir*, to depart, go away.*Il parle*, he speaks.*Nous partons*, we depart, are going away.

Go to her and to him. Who speaks? It is I. No, it was he. Your mother and I are going away. His brother and you gather fruit. He comes with them. She was with me. *They* depart! *I* go to Paris! It is myself.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

54. **Demonstrative Pronouns** point out the person or thing spoken of.

Ex. *je prendrai celui-ci, ajoutez-y celui-là*, I will take this one, add that to it.

They are:

ce, . . . *this, that, he, she, it, they, these, those.*

celui, . . . *this, that, he, she, it, the one.*

ceci, . . . *this.*

cela, . . . *that.*

Celui varies in gender and number, the others are invariable.

	Sing.	Plur.
Masc.	<i>celui</i> , . . . <i>this, that, &c.</i>	<i>ceux</i> , . . . <i>these, those.</i>
Fem.	<i>celle</i> , . . . „ „	<i>celles</i> , . . . „ „

It will be seen from the examples given above that *ci* and *là* can be joined to these pronouns as to nouns, to point out whether a thing is close at hand or further off. In *ceci* and *cela* they have become one word with the pronoun.

Cela is often shortened into *ça*.

Ceci and *cela* denote something not named before, but indicated at the moment of speaking: ex. *donnez-moi cela*, give me that.

Ce is only a pronoun when it stands before a relative pronoun, as *dites-moi ce qui est arrivé*, tell me what has happened; or precedes or follows *être*, as *ce n'est pas moi*, it is not I; *c'est bien heureux*, it is very fortunate. When it precedes a noun it is a demonstrative adjective: ex. *ce livre*.

Although *nous* and *vous* are plural, it is correct to use the third person singular of the verb after *ce*: ex. *c'est nous*, it is we; but if a plural noun or pronoun of the third person follow the verb, *ce sont* must be used: ex. *ce sont mes gants*, they are my gloves; *sont-ce vos livres?* are these your books?

Celui is used before a *relative pronoun*, or the preposition *de*. Ex. *celui qui l'a fait*, the one [or he] who has done it; *ce griffonnage est celui d'un enfant étourdi*, this scribbling is that of a careless child.

Celui-ci, *celui-là*, express *this one* and *that one*, the *latter* and the *former*; they are inflected like *celui*. Ex. *Hélène et Jean se mirent à écrire, mais celle-là ne faisait que flâner*, Helen and John began to write, but the former only dawdled.

Celui-là may be elegantly used at the beginning of a sentence, with *qui* following the verb of which *celui-là* is the subject. Ex. *celui-là est toujours riche qui se contente de peu*, he is always rich who contents himself with little.

A sentence cannot end with *celui*, *celle*, and *ceux*, *celles*; *là* must be added if this pronoun is the last word: ex. *je désire celui-là*, I wish for that one.

Exercise on Demonstrative Pronouns.*Pas*, not.*Mauvais*, bad.*Grand*, large, tall.

Give me this one, not that one. Who comes? It is I. My basket is larger than that of Valentine. This is good; that is bad. His son is taller than my aunt's (that of my aunt). These flowers are more beautiful than those. I will take this, not that. Gather this one and that one. Your copy-books are larger than those of my cousins. Are these his gloves? These are Edmée's ribbons. This is Helen's sash. It is a mistake.

Possessive Pronouns.

55. Possessive pronouns always refer to a noun already named, and agree with it in gender and number, as, *son frère et les vôtres*, his brother and yours. *Les vôtres* stands for *your brothers*, a masculine plural noun. They are called *pronouns* because they replace a noun, and *possessive* because they show to whom it belongs. They are :

	Sing.	Plur.	
Masc.	le mien,	les miens,	} <i>mine.</i>
Fem.	la mienne,	les miennes,	
Masc.	le tien,	les tiens,	} <i>thine.</i>
Fem.	la tienne,	les tiennes,	
Masc.	le sien,	les siens,	} <i>his, hers, its.</i>
Fem.	la sienne,	les siennes,	
Masc.	le nôtre,	} les nôtres,	<i>ours.</i>
Fem.	la nôtre,		
Masc.	le vôtre,	} les vôtres,	<i>yours.</i>
Fem.	la vôtre,		
Masc.	le leur,	} les leurs,	<i>theirs.</i>
Fem.	la leur,		

A circumflex accent must be placed over the *ô* in *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*, making the sound nearly like *o* in *note*.

In the Middle Ages *mien*, *tien*, &c. were used as possessive adjectives, as *le mien seigneur*, my lord. This fell into disuse, but a trace of it remains in such phrases as *un mien cousin*, a cousin of mine ; *« sien ami*, a friend of his. This locution is only used in a playful way.

Occasionally, to give force, the possessive pronoun is used without an article; as *je serai toujours ténacé*, I shall be always thine.

Leur, when a possessive pronoun, always requires the article. Ex. *ce carton est le leur*, this bandbox is theirs; *ces devoirs sont les leurs*, these themes are theirs.

Exercise on Possessive Pronouns.

Les patins, the skates.

Your copy-book is cleaner than mine. This scribbling is worse than his. Your slate is cleaner than theirs, and mine is cleaner than yours. Her pens are better than theirs. This picture is ours. These are their ribbons. Here are your skates; give me mine. These skates are his. Who is this child? A cousin of mine.

Relative Pronouns.

56. A relative pronoun must *relate* to some noun or pronoun preceding it. This is called its *antecedent*.

Ex. *ce qui me chagrine*, that which vexes me; *les gants que j'ai perdus*, the gloves which I have lost. In these examples *ce* is the antecedent of *qui*, and *gants* of *que*.

A relative pronoun may sometimes be understood in English, but must always be expressed in French. It would be allowable to say 'the gloves I have lost,' but in French the omission of *que* would make the sentence inadmissible.

57. The relative pronouns are :

Qui, *que*, *quoi*, *who*, *whom*, *which*, *what*.

Dont, of *whom*, of *which*, *whose* (used for both persons and things), and *de qui*, persons only, like the English of *whom*.

Dont and *de qui* also mean *from whom*, *from which*. The dative to *whom* is formed with a preposition, *à qui* for persons, and borrows from *lequel* for animals and things.

Lequel forms a second set of pronouns.

Lequel, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, *which*.

Duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles, of whom, of which, of what.

Auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, to whom, to which, to what.

58. When used in questions the Relative Pronouns require no antecedent, and are then called **interrogative pronouns**, as *qui sont ces jeunes gens?* who are these young people? *Que dites-vous?* what do you say? *Lequel préférez-vous?* which do you prefer?

De cannot be thus used. It is replaced by *de qui*, of whom, *de quoi*, of what. *De qui parlez-vous?* of whom are you speaking? *De quoi l'accusez-vous?* of what do you accuse him?

With prepositions **qui** must be used if it refers to a person, or a personified thing: ex. *le monsieur pour qui vous m'avez demandé cette place*, the gentleman for whom you asked me for that post.

But if it refers to a thing, **lequel** is employed: ex. *le livre pour lequel j'ai donné tant d'argent*, the book for which I paid so much money.

Lequel, laquelle, &c. ought to be used instead of *qui* or *que* when these would leave the meaning doubtful: ex. *la sœur du prisonnier qui vous a écrit*. Here *qui*, according to French construction, must refer to the noun immediately preceding it; so that if we would express that the sister wrote, we must say *la sœur du prisonnier laquelle vous a écrit*.

Qui never elides the last letter. **Que** does. Ex. *la pendule qu'il a achetée*, the clock which he has bought; *le rosier qu'elle a planté*, the rose-tree which she has planted.

Lequel, duquel, &c. may be used absolutely or interrogatively: ex. *j'ai vu votre frère. Lequel?* I have seen your brother. Which? *On a parlé du vicaire*, they spoke of the curate. *Duquel?* of which? *Voici le vicaire duquel on parlait*, here is the curate of whom they were speaking.

Quoi is only used as an exclamation, with a preposition or in an absolute sense: ex. *quoi donc!* how! *On ne sait à quoi il pense*, one does not know what he is thinking about; *il y a dans son air je ne sais quoi qui ne me revient pas*, there is in his look something, I know not what, which does not please me. Here *quoi* has the meaning of 'somewhat,' and has the sense of a noun lent it. As it cannot be used to express *what?* *que* replaces it: ex. *qu'avez-vous là?* what have you there? *Que serait votre avis?* what would be your advice?

Exercise on Relative Pronouns.*Vous faites*, you make.*Le fait*, the fact.*Fait*, made, done.*L'homme*, the man.*Le vicaire*, the curate.

The man who was here. The flower that you gather. The fact of which you speak. The mistakes which you make. What are you saying? To whom do you speak? What have you done? What do you whisper? The mother whose son is here. Of what do you speak? Tell me which of these roses you prefer? Who is this young man? Which? This young curate who was here? I do not know of whom you are speaking.

General Exercise on Pronouns.*Il a*, he has.*Que*, than, that.*Nous apprenons*, we learn.*Connaissez-vous*? do you know?*Apprenez-vous*? do you learn? *La leçon*, the lesson.*Vous donnez*, you give.*L'aîné*, the elder.*Je mets*, I put.*Une réponse*, an answer.*Mettez-vous*? do you put?*Trop*, too much.*Le panier*, the basket.

What lessons do you learn? I have the basket of which you speak. We learn the lessons which you give to us. What do you put in your baskets? Speak of it. Do you sell plums? Who speaks? It is I. It is those children. I have your exercise and mine. This piano is excellent. Your themes are short. Of which do you speak? Do you see that lily? Here are your pens; you have mine. Those flowers are more beautiful than theirs. It is you who give it. This is (*est*) the eldest. Give me that. Who is that soldier? Give them to me. It is to you that I speak. I sell it to them. You return the ribbon to them. Which will you have? What has he? Of what are you speaking? The misfortune of which he speaks. Have you any answers? I had two. Has he any flowers? He has many. Give me some of them. Every one has his opinion. They (*en*) speak of it. No one speaks of it to me. People talk too much. Here are both of them. I have some. Put some in my basket. What do you learn? Who is the eldest? Of what do you speak? I have seen the man. Which? Those of whom you speak. These copy-books are theirs. I have none of them, but my sister has several. Whom have you seen? No one.

VERBS.

Le Verbe.

59. **The Verb** is a word which declares that a person or thing is something, has something, does something, or suffers something.

The name comes from *verbum*, *word*, the verb being the most important word in a sentence. That person or thing of which the verb declares, or, as it is called, *predicates* a fact, is called the subject, *sujet*, and is either a noun or a pronoun. It replies to the question *qui est-ce qui* ? who ? for persons, and *qu'est-ce qui* ? which, what ? for things.

Ex. *je copie*, I am copying. Who copies ? *je*. *Je* is therefore the subject of the verb. *Le papier brûle*, the paper burns. What burns ? *le papier*.

French verbs may be divided into two large classes, **Transitive** and **Intransitive**. The first of these classes is subdivided into three smaller ones, **active**, **passive**, and **reflective** ; the second contains the **neuter** and **impersonal** ones.

In an active verb the subject performs the action : ex. *je copie*. In this sentence *je* is the subject, *copie* the verb ; but the sense is manifestly incomplete if it stops at *je copie* ; *mon devoir*, my theme, or some such addition, is required to complete the sense, and the word which does this is called the **Object**, or **Complément Direct**, because it shows on what object the action of the verb is directed, and *completes the sense*.

60. Verbs which require an object are called **transitive**, 'passing across,' because the sense passes as it were across the verb to some farther point.

When a preposition comes between the verb and its object this is called the **complément indirect** : ex. *je pense à vous*, I think of you. Sometimes it is understood, *je vous donne*, I give you ; i.e. *to* you.

An active verb is conjugated with *avoir*.

61. Passive verbs are those in which the subject suffers an action done by others :

Ex. *l'enfant est porté par sa bonne*, the little one is carried by his nurse.

When the subject both performs and suffers the action, the verb is called *reflective* in English, and in French a **verbe pronominal**. *Se laver*, to wash oneself; *se lever*, to rise; are reflective verbs in French. It will be noticed that the latter is in English a neuter verb; such often become in French *verbes pronominaux*: ex. *se promener*, to walk; *s'envoler*, to fly away.

62. Reflective verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, and take two pronouns of the same person :

Ex. *je me lave*, I wash myself.

The second pronoun is either a direct or indirect object, according to whether the verb governs an accusative or a dative : ex. *se flatter de*, to flatter oneself; *se nuire* (*nuire à*), to injure oneself. In the first case, the past participle agrees with the second pronoun : ex. *ils se sont flattés*, they flattered themselves. In the second it is invariable : ex. *ils s'étaient nuï*, they had harmed themselves.

When a reflective verb expresses an action reciprocated between two or more subjects, it is called a **Reciprocal verb**, as *ils se sont flattés les uns les autres*, they have flattered one another.

63. Neuter or intransitive verbs have no object : ex. *il court*, he runs; *le merle vole*, the blackbird flies; *la grive chante*, the thrush sings.

Unlike active verbs, a neuter can never be turned into a passive one. They are *generally* conjugated with *avoir*, and then their past participle is invariable : ex. *ils ont couché à Sens*, they slept at Sens. Such as take *être* (ex. *arriver*, to arrive) have the past participle inflected : ex. *elles sont arrivées*, they have arrived.

64. The Impersonal Verbs are those of which only the third person singular is used; they are so called because they cannot be said to take any of the three persons of a verb as a subject. In *il pleut*, it rains; *il tonnera*, it will

thunder, *il* is a neuter pronoun, expressing something vague and impersonal.

Active and neuter verbs may often be used impersonally: ex. *il fera beau*, it will be fine; *il arrivera du monde*, there will be company coming.

The impersonal verb is conjugated with *avoir*: ex. *il a tonné*, it has thundered; but an active or neuter verb used impersonally keeps whichever is its own proper auxiliary, as *il a fait chaud*, it has been hot.

Moods.

65. As in Latin, a French verb has the Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive moods, as well as a fifth, the Conditional, not found in Latin, where the Imperfect of the Subjunctive takes its place.

The **Indicative** (*indicatif*) is so called because it indicates or points out that something is being felt or done.

Ex. *je vais*, I go; *vous lisez*, you are reading.

It has four simple and four compound tenses.

The **Conditional** (*conditionnel*) implies that an action is performed subject to some condition.

Ex. *j'irais si je n'étais pas occupé*, I would go if I were not busy. It has one simple and one compound tense.

The **Imperative** (*impératif*) has also one simple and one compound tense, but the second is very seldom used. This mood commands and forbids, thence its name (Lat. *modus imperativus*).

The **Subjunctive** (*subjonctif*) has its name from being governed by some clause, expressed or understood, and is preceded by a conjunction uniting it to this clause, or some emotion or action.

As *restez jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne*, stay till he comes; *venez, que je vous le dise*, come, that I may tell you. In this last sentence *afin*, in order, is understood before *que*. *Je voudrais qu'il le fit*, I wish he would do it.

It has two simple and two compound tenses.

The **Infinitive** (*infinitif*) expresses no limit to an action.

Ex. *trouver*, to find.

The Infinitive has a present and a past tense, two simple participles and one compound one; as it has nothing to do with persons, it is called the **Impersonal mood**.

The **Participle** has its name from partaking of the nature both of a verb and of an adjective.

There are two simple participles and two compound : *ex. aimant*, loving ; *ayant aimé*, having loved ; *aimé*, loved.

Tenses.—*Temps*, Latin *tempus*, *time*.

66. The Tenses show *when* the action spoken of takes place.

The **Present Imperfect** tense shows that the action is going on at the time when we speak of it : *ex. je travaille*, I am working.

It should be noticed that, though in English we constantly use the auxiliary *to be*, as above, in forming the present tense, it would be a grave fault to do so in French.

There can be only one present tense, but, as in English, there are several past ones, as an action can be more or less entirely past.

67. The **Past Imperfect**, though often translated by the English perfect, as *je parlais*, I spoke, ought only to be used (a) when it means a state past, indeed, but continuous ; (b) when it signifies that something used to be done ; (c) when it can be translated by *was* with a present participle, as *je dormais très bien*, I used to sleep very well ; *je dormais quand il parut*, I was sleeping when he appeared. It is always used to describe any action which was going on while another took place :

Ex. tous écriviez quand je partis, you were writing when I went away.

The difference between this tense and the *past definite* will be best seen by examples : *ils échangeaient des regards* means, they continued to exchange looks ; *ils échangèrent un regard* implies a single, rapid glance. The past definite then shows that a thing was done at a *definite* past time, usually marked by some word such as *quand*, when, *hier* yesterday :

Ex. sur le soir nous aperçûmes des flammes qui s'élevaient dans

les airs, towards evening we perceived flames which were rising into the air. *Sur le soir* marks that the time named is completely past at the moment when the narrative is given, while the use of the imperfect in *s'élevaient* shows that the flames continued to rise for some time.

L'empereur mit pied à terre près du banc sur lequel j'étais assis, the emperor alighted near the bench on which I was sitting. Here the action of alighting is momentary, that of sitting continuous.

The past definite is often called the *Historical Tense*.

In conversation the **Past Indefinite** (*passé indéfini*) is constantly used for the past definite, as *il nous a raconté ses mésaventures*, he told us his misadventures; *je me suis levé de bonne heure*, I got up early.

This tense implies that the action named is past, but at an indefinite time :

Ex. *j'ai entendu cette chanson quelque part*, I have heard that song somewhere.

When, in familiar conversation, it replaces the past definite, it may, however, be used with a word which marks a point of time :

Ex. *je me suis levé de bonne heure ce matin*, I got up early *this morning*.

The **Past Perfect** (*plus-que-parfait*) marks that something was done before another, which also took place in a past time :

Ex. *j'avais copié mon devoir quand vous êtes entré*, I had copied my theme when you came in.

It corresponds to the imperfect, and has its name from its expressing *two* past things, as in the example given.

The **Past Definite Perfect** (*passé antérieur*) answers to the past definite ; it expresses that an act *was* done just before some other :

Ex. *quand il eut copié son thème il sortit*, when he had copied his exercise he went out.

68. The **Future Imperfect** implies that something will take place at a future time :

Ex. *j'écrirai demain*, I shall write to-morrow.

It is formed by adding to the infinitive of the verb the present imperfect of *avoir*: *ai, as, a, ons, ez (avons, avez), ont*. All the Romance languages make their future thus, and if the third conjugation seems an exception, it is not really so, but merely a contraction, the ending *oir* being shortened into *r*: ex. *apercevoir*, to perceive; *j'apercevr-ai*, I shall perceive. The future is therefore, strictly speaking, a compound tense, as it is formed from an infinitive and an auxiliary; but these are so completely smelted together that even a Frenchman would hardly perceive that they had once been separate.

The **Future Perfect** (*futur antérieur*) indicates that some act will take place before another :

Ex. *quand j'aurai mis ce devoir au net je lirai*, when I have copied this theme fair I will read.

When a future idea is implied, the future must always be used in French, though in English and German the present often replaces it :

Ex. *quand j'irai à Paris*, when I go to Paris.

69. The **Conditional** follows the same rule in every conjugation, but in the third it takes the same endings as the past imperfect of *avoir*: *ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, and aient*. In the third the infinitive is contracted: ex. *je recevrais*, I should receive.

Its compound tense is the *conditional perfect* (*conditionnel antérieur*):

Ex. *je serais parti si j'avais été moins souffrant*, I should have gone if I had been less unwell.

By *Simple Tenses* are meant those conjugated without any auxiliary, as *vous battez*, you beat; *nous parlions*, we were speaking; while compound ones are formed by the auxiliary and a past participle: ex. *j'ai vu*, I have seen; *j'aurais cru*, I should have thought.

70. Every verb consists of two parts, the **root** or **stem**, and the **termination**: ex. *pens-er*, to think.

By the **conjugation** of a verb is meant the *coupling* or

yoking of the root with the inflections, which imply the differences of person, number, mood, and tense.

However much the inflections vary, the root is never altered.

There are four conjugations, distinguished by their terminations ; viz. *er*, *ir*, *oir*, and *re*.

The First Conjugation contains the greater number of French verbs, and includes not only those which belong to the Latin first conjugation, but many which learned writers have brought into it, but which properly should belong to other conjugations, as *imprimer*, to print (Lat. *imprimere*).

The Second Conjugation, which ends in *ir*, is divided into two classes, those conjugated like *sentir*, to feel, which answer to Latin verbs of the fourth conjugation, or like *finir*, to finish.

The Third Conjugation contains very few verbs: it answers to the Latin one in *ĕre*, as, *avoir*, to have (Lat. *habĕre*), and a few from *ĕre*, as *savoir*, to know (Lat. *sapĕre*).

There are about sixty verbs in **the fourth conjugation**, which only differs as to conjugation from the third in the termination of its infinitive being *re* instead of *oir*.

71. French verbs may be placed in two classes, **Weak** or **Regular** verbs, and **Strong** or **Irregular** verbs. This is hardly a correct name to give the latter, as they are as regular as any others, only they *obey a different law*.

The *Strong* verbs all form their past definite by putting the accent on the root of the verb, as *je vins*, I came. The *Weak* ones require an additional syllable, as *j'aimai*, I loved.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

72. As the Passive Voice and the Compound Tenses of French verbs are conjugated by means of *Avoir* and *Être*, these verbs are called **Auxiliary**, or *helping* verbs, but only when so used. *Avoir* is an active verb when conjugated alone, as

un chapeau, you have a hat ; and *Être* is a verb

. All other verbs are verbs adjective.

The Auxiliary Verb AVOIR, to have.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I have.

J'ai
Tu as
Il a
Nous avons
Vous avez
Ils ont

PAST IMPERFECT.

I had or was having.

J'avais
Tu avais
Il avait
Nous avions
Vous aviez
Ils avaient

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I had.

J'eus
Tu eus
Il eut
Nous eûmes
Vous eûtes
Ils eurent

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall have.

J'aurai	} Of the Present Imperfect.
Tu auras	
Il aura	
Nous aurons	
Vous aurez	
Ils auront	

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have had.

J'ai eu
Tu as eu
Il a eu
Nous avons eu
Vous avez eu
Ils ont eu

PAST PERFECT.

I had had.

J'avais eu
Tu avais eu
Il avait eu
Nous avions eu
Vous aviez eu
Ils avaient eu

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had had.

J'eus eu
Tu eus eu
Il eut eu
Nous eûmes eu
Vous eûtes eu
Ils eurent eu

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have had.

J'aurai eu
Tu auras eu
Il aura eu
Nous aurons eu
Vous aurez eu
Ils auront eu

Conditional Mood.

IMPERFECT.

I should have.

J'aurais	} Cf. the Past Imperfect Indicative.
Tu aurais	
Il aurait	
Nous aurions	
Vous auriez	
Ils auraient	

PERFECT.

I should have had.

J'aurais eu
Tu aurais eu
Il aurait eu
Nous aurions eu
Vous auriez eu
Ils auraient eu

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Have [thou],

Aie
Ayons
Ayez

PRESENT PERFECT.

Many grammars give this tense,
but, as it is never required, it is
needless to burden the memory
with it.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may have.

Que j'aie
Que tu aies
Qu'il ait
Que nous ayons
Que vous ayez
Qu'ils aient

PRESENT PERFECT.

That I may have had.

Que j'ai eu
Que tu aies eu
Qu'il ait eu
Que nous ayons eu
Que vous ayez eu
Qu'ils aient eu

PAST IMPERFECT.

That I might have.

Que j'eusse
Que tu eusses
Qu'il eût
Que nous eussions
Que vous eussiez
Qu'ils eussent

PAST PERFECT.

That I might have had.

Que j'eusse eu
Que tu eusses eu
Qu'il eût eu
Que nous eussions eu
Que vous eussiez eu
Qu'ils eussent eu

Infinitive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Avoir, <i>to have.</i>	Avoir eu, <i>to have had.</i>

Participles.

PRESENT.	PAST (<i>variable</i>).
Ayant, <i>having.</i>	Eu, <i>cue, had.</i>

PERFECT.

Ayant eu, *having had.*

Exercises on Avoir.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT IMPERFECT (*présent*).

<i>Mais</i> , but.	<i>Finir</i> , to finish.
<i>À</i> , to.	<i>Un encrier</i> , an inkstand.
<i>Pas de</i> , not any, no.	<i>De l'encre</i> , some ink.

Charles has an inkstand, but not any ink. I have a slate, but no sponge. We have an atlas. You have to finish. They have the books, but no copy-book. She has some beautiful pictures. You have my ribbons, but we have your roses. He has an atlas, but no copy-book.

II.

PAST IMPERFECT (*imparfait*).

<i>Le jardin</i> , the garden.	<i>Le dictionnaire</i> , the dictionary.
<i>Du malheur</i> , ill-luck, misfortune.	<i>Et</i> , and.

I used to have a beautiful garden. She had an atlas and a dictionary. They were having some excellent coffee. He had a bad pen. They were having ill luck.

III.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT (*passé défini*).

<i>Hier</i> , yesterday.	<i>Quand</i> , when.
<i>La pension</i> , the allowance.	<i>Une récompense</i> , a recompense, reward.

Yesterday I had ill-luck. When you had your allowance. Yesterday he had a reward. When you had that inkstand. When I had that book they had this one.

IV.

PRESENT PERFECT (*passé indéfini*).*Un pensum*, an imposition.*Un petit pain*, a roll.

I have had a reward and Charles has had an imposition. You have had a beautiful atlas. They have had some coffee. We have had some money and a roll.

V.

PAST PERFECT (*plus-que-parfait*).*Alors*, then.*Une réponse*, an answer.*Une lettre*, a letter.

I had had a letter. Then thou hadst had an answer. Charles had had ill-luck. We had had a basket of flowers, and you had had some fruit. They had had some letters and a reward.

VI.

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT (*passé antérieur*).*Après que*, after that.*Dès que*, as soon as.

When I had had an answer. After that he had had my skates. As soon as you had had my letter. When they had had my ink.

VII.

FUTURE IMPERFECT (*futur*).*Mal aux dents*, toothache.*Plusieurs*, several, many.*Quelque chose* (mas.), something.

You will have an imposition. Thou shalt have coffee and rolls. We shall have several pictures. Your sister will have toothache. They will have several rewards. We shall have an allowance. Then he will have some ink. His mother shall have something.

VIII.

FUTURE PERFECT (*futur antérieur*).*Oui*, yes.*Non*, no.

I shall have had something. Yes, you will have had a reward. They will have had a basket of fruit and Arthur will have had some flowers. You will have had an imposition. No, Charles will have had it.

IX.

CONDITIONAL (*conditionnel*).

Un billet, a note, a ticket. *Le timbre-poste*, postage-stamp.
Pour, for.

I should have ill-luck. No, Charles would have it. They would have a reward. Yes, they would have a basket of oranges. You would have a ticket for the concert. They would have some postage-stamps for these letters.

X.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (*conditionnel passé*).

Le facteur, the postman. *Le mandat de poste*, the post-office order.

The postman would have had the notes. You would have had the stamps. She would have had the post-office order. They would have had ill-luck.

XI.

IMPERATIVE (*mode impératif*).

La persévérance, perseverance.

Let us have courage. Have patience (f.). Let us have that book. Have perseverance.

XII.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*mode subjonctif*).—PRESENT IMPERFECT (*présent*).

Je désire, I wish, or hope (governs subj.). *Il faut*, it is necessary, one must (governs subj.).

I wish that you may have a reward. It is necessary that he have some stamps. I wish that they may have the tickets. It is necessary that they have them.

XIII.

PAST IMPERFECT (*imparfait*).

*Il sembla*it, it seemed (governs subj.). *Il fallait*, it was necessary.
Je voudrais, I should like (governs subj.). *Je voulais*, I wished, or
 sub.). will.

It seemed that he might have the post-office order. It was necessary that the postman should have the notes. I should like that they should have the letter for Arthur. I wished that you should have courage. I should like her to have tickets for the concert. It was necessary that I should have perseverance.

XIV.

PRESENT PERFECT (*passé*).

Croyez-vous ? do you think, or believe? } Govern subjunctive.
Je suis fâché que, I am vexed that. }
Jusqu'à ce que, until. *Attendez,* wait.

Do you think that I have had a reward? I am vexed that you have had an imposition. Do you think that they have had some fruit? Wait till you have had your atlas. Wait till she has had her slate.

XV.

PAST PERFECT (*plus-que-parfait*).

Quoique, bien que, although } Govern subjunctive.
Pour que, in order to }

J'étais, I was. *J'attendais,* I was waiting, or expecting.
L'argent de poche, pocket-money.

He had a reward, although he had had an imposition. I was vexed, although they had had a letter. I was waiting in order that they might have had their copybooks. You had pocket-money in order that you might have had books and pencils.

XVI.

INFINITIVE.

To have courage. Having perseverance. To have had a letter.

AVOIR, conjugated negatively.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I have not.
 Je n'ai pas
 Tu n'as pas
 Il n'a pas
 Nous n'avons pas
 Vous n'avez pas
 Ils n'ont pas

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have not had, &c.
 Je n'ai pas eu

PAST IMPERFECT.*I was not having.*

Je n'avais pas

PAST PERFECT.*I had not had.*

Je n'avais pas eu.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.*I had not.*

Je n'eus pas

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.*I had not had.*

Je n'eus pas eu

FUTURE IMPERFECT.*I shall not have.*

Je n'aurai pas

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall not have had.*

Je n'aurai pas eu

Conditional Mood.**IMPERFECT.***I should not have.*

Je n'aurais pas

PERFECT.*I should not have had.*

Je n'aurais pas eu

Imperative Mood.*Do not thou have.*

N'aie pas

N'ayez pas

Subjunctive Mood.**PRESENT IMPERFECT.***That I may not have.*

Que je n'aie pas

PRESENT PERFECT.*That I may not have had.*

Que je n'aie pas eu

PAST IMPERFECT.*That I might not have.*

Que je n'eusse pas

PAST PERFECT.*That I might not have had.*

Que je n'eusse pas eu

Infinitive Mood.**PRESENT.***Not to have.*

Ne pas avoir

PERFECT.*Not to have had.*

N'avoir pas eu

Participles.

PRESENT.

N'ayant pas

PAST.

Ne pas eu, -e

With reflective verbs the negative follows the first pronoun; ex. *je ne me suis pas flatté*, I did not flatter myself; *ne te flatte pas*, do not flatter thyself.

When a pronoun is governed by a verb, *ne* precedes it in a negative sentence; ex. *je ne le bats pas*, I do not beat him; *ne vous bat-il pas*? does he not beat you?

In such sentences as: You will come, will you not? They have not gone, have they? the question is asked in French by *n'est-ce pas*? *Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas*? *Ils ne sont pas partis, n'est-ce pas*?

AVOIR, conjugated interrogatively.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Have I?

Ai-je?

As-tu?

A-t-il, a-t-elle?

Avons-nous?

Avez-vous?

Ont-ils?

PRESENT PERFECT.

Have I had?

Ai-je eu?

This may serve as a model for all the tenses of a verb conjugated interrogatively. When the *first* person singular ends in *e* mute, as *je parle*, I speak, instead of using *est-ce que*, the *e* may be accented, *parlé-je*?

When the *third* person singular ends in a vowel, a *t* (which in old French was part of the verb, but which dropped out) is placed between the verb and pronoun, as *parle-t-il*? does he speak? *va-t-il*? does he go?

AVOIR and ÊTRE, conjugated negatively and interrogatively.

<i>Have I not ?</i>	<i>Am I not ?</i>
N'ai-je pas ?	Ne suis-je pas ?
N'as-tu pas ?	N'es-tu pas ?
N'a-t-il pas ?	N'est-il pas ?
N'avons-nous pas ?	Ne sommes-nous pas ?
N'avez-vous pas ?	N'êtes-vous pas ?
N'ont-ils pas ? &c.	Ne sont-ils pas ?
<i>Have I not had ?</i>	<i>Have I not been ?</i>
N'ai-je pas eu ?	N'ai-je pas été ?
N'as-tu pas eu ? &c.	N'as-tu pas été, &c.

Negative and Interrogative Forms of the Verb.

73. The negative in French is usually formed by *ne*, with *pas*, *jamais*, *rien*, &c. ; ex. *je ne parle pas*, I do not speak ; *je n'ai rien*, I have nothing.

Ne stands between the subject and the verb in a simple tense, and between the subject and auxiliary in a compound tense ; as *je n'ai pas parlé*, I have not spoken.

Pas stands before the participle in a compound tense, as do usually other adverbs :

Ex. *je n'ai pas beaucoup parlé*, I have not spoken much.

Some, however, as *souvent*, often, and other adverbs ending in *ment*, may follow the participle, as *j'ai pleuré amèrement*, I wept bitterly. It is a mere question of ear.

Pas may be left out after *cesser*, to cease ; *oser*, to dare ; *pouvoir*, to be able ; and *savoir*, when taken in the sense of not being able :

Ex. *je ne saurais l'expliquer*, I cannot explain it.

Verbs are only conjugated interrogatively in the tenses of the indicative and conditional moods. The pronoun comes after the verb, as in our own *have you* ? ex. *avez-vous le livre* ? have you the book ?

There is no way in French of conjugating a verb which answers to our *do* and *does*, &c., so that the pronoun in French

always follows the verb; ex. *parlent-ils*? do they speak? *sont-ils partis*? are they gone? If an auxiliary be used, the pronoun comes after it; as *ai-je parlé*? have I spoken.

A hyphen (*trait-d'union*) is put between the verb and pronoun in this form of conjugation; ex. *vendez-vous vos chevaux*? are you selling your horses?

When it would be disagreeable to the ear to have such sounds as *cours-je*? do I run? *dors-je*? do I sleep? *est-ce* is used, especially with verbs of one syllable; ex. *est-ce que je dors trop*? do I sleep too much? *Est-ce que* is also used to mark doubt or surprise; ex. *est-ce que vous le voudrez*? shall you be willing? *est-ce que je dois le louer*? ought I to praise him? In both these cases *est-ce que* implies hesitation and doubt.

When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, it is usually put before the verb, which is then followed by a personal pronoun; ex. *votre sœur part-elle*? is your sister going away? *Édouard est-il arrivé*? is Edward come?

Exercise on Negative and Interrogative Forms of the Verb.

Je dors, I sleep.

Ni . . . ni, neither, nor.

Écrire, to write.

Calculer, to count up, calculate.

Je tiens, I hold.

Le calcul, the sum.

Copier, to copy.

La traduction, the translation.

Have I your book? Has he a sum to copy? Has he not to calculate? What have you to write? Has he to write a book? She has not a translation to write. Are they impatient? I am not in the library. Are they not in the garden? Alfred is not in the library. Was she patient? She was neither patient nor quiet. Had you an imposition yesterday? I had neither an imposition nor a sum to (à) copy. What had you? Will they have a translation to write? I shall not have any sums to copy. Would he have his skates? He would not have them. Would they have been vexed? They would neither have been vexed nor impatient. Should I have been his favourite? Be not cross. Let us not be impatient. Has he not been here? Am I sleeping? Am I holding you? You are here, are you not? I sleep too much, do I not?

*ÊTRE, to be.***Indicative Mood.****PRESENT IMPERFECT.***I am.*

Je suis
 Tu es
 Il est
 Nous sommes
 Vous êtes
 Ils sont

PAST IMPERFECT.*I was.*

J'étais	} Cf. Past Imperfect of <i>Avoir</i> .
Tu étais	
Il était	
Nous étions	
Vous étiez	
Ils étaient	

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.*I was.*

Je fus
 Tu fus
 Il fut
 Nous fûmes
 Vous fûtes
 Ils furent

FUTURE IMPERFECT.*I shall be.*

Je serai	} Cf. Present Imperfect of <i>Avoir</i> .
Tu seras	
Il sera	
Nous serons	
Vous serez	
Ils seront	

PRESENT PERFECT.*I have been.*

J'ai été
 Tu as été
 Il a été
 Nous avons été
 Vous avez été
 Ils ont été

PAST PERFECT.*I had been.*

J'avais été
 Tu avais été
 Il avait été
 Nous avions été
 Vous aviez été
 Ils avaient été

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.*I had been.*

J'eus été
 Tu eus été
 Il eut été
 Nous eûmes été
 Vous eûtes été
 Ils eurent été

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have been.*

J'aurai été
 Tu auras été
 Il aura été
 Nous aurons été
 Vous aurez été
 Ils auront été

Conditional Mood.**PRESENT.***I should be.*

Je serais	} Cf. Past Imperfect Indicative.
Tu serais	
Il serait	
Nous serions	
Vous seriez	
Ils seraient	

IMPERFECT.*I should have been.*

J'aurais été
Tu aurais été
Il aurait été
Nous aurions été
Vous auriez été
Ils auraient été

Imperative Mood.*Be [thou].*

So s
Soyons
Soyez

Subjunctive Mood.**PRESENT IMPERFECT.***That I may be.*

Que je sois
Que tu sois
Qu'il soit
Que nous soyons
Que vous soyez
Qu'ils soient

PRESENT PERFECT.*That I may have been.*

Que j'aie eu
Que tu aies eu
Qu'il ait eu
Que nous ayons eu
Que vous ayez eu
Qu'ils aient eu

PAST IMPERFECT.*That I might be.*

Que je fusse
Que tu fusses
Qu'il fût
Que nous fussions
Que vous fussiez
Qu'ils fussent

PAST PERFECT.*That I might have been.*

Que j'eusse été
Que tu eusses été
Qu'il eût été
Que nous eussions été
Que vous eussiez été
Qu'ils eussent été

Infinitive Mood.**PRESENT.***Être, to be.***PERFECT.***Avoir été, to have been.*

Participles.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Étant, <i>being</i> .	Été, <i>been</i> .

PERFECT.

Ayant été, *having been*.

Although a third person, *qu'il soit*, let him be, is sometimes given to the imperative, this should rather belong to the subjunctive.

74. Observations on ÊTRE, to be.

When *ce* precedes *être* the verb is singular,—

(a) When followed by a pronoun of the first or second person, whether singular or plural, ex. *c'est nous qui l'avons fait*, it is we who have done it.

(b) When followed by two or more nouns, of which the first is singular, ex. *c'est la mère et les enfants dont j'ai parlé*, it is the mother and children of whom I spoke.

(c) When the noun following *être* is preceded by *de*: ex. *c'est d'eux qu'on parle*, it is of them that people talk.

The English student finds no difficulty here, as the use of *c'est* corresponds to *it is*, just as in cases where the first noun is plural, the verb must be so too in both languages: ex. *ce sont les mêmes bosquets, les mêmes ruisseaux*, these are the same shrubberies, the same streamlets.

The same rule holds good when *ce* corresponds to some plural noun already named, as *il y a neuf muses, ce sont . . .*, there are nine muses, they are . . .

Although *être* is plural when followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, it is often made singular when the plural offends the ear: thus *sont-ce* is either avoided by using *est-ce que ce sont*, or becomes *est-ce*; ex. *est-ce eux?* is it they? But this is rather a matter of taste than of rule. Pascal wrote, *sont-ce des religieux qui parlent ainsi?* are they men vowed to a religious life who speak thus?

When it is with an adjective can be replaced by *that is*, *ce* is used: ex. *c'est affreux!* it is [or that is] frightful! (§ 118).

C'est, with an adjective, must not have a dependent sentence beginning with *que* or *de*. Thus we cannot say *c'est juste qu'il meure*, it is just that he die, for *juste* is an adjective; therefore *il est* is required. With an adverb *c'est* is correct: ex. *c'est beaucoup que de savoir commander*, it is much to know how to command.

Vrai is the only adjective which may be preceded by *il est* as well as *c'est*: ex. *nous sommes rentrés tard, c'est vrai, mais nous nous sommes levés de bon matin*, we came home late, it is true, but we got up early.

ÊTRE, to be.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT TENSE.

I am vexed. This child is your favourite. These flowers are beautiful. Wait, we are here. They are active. That ribbon is blue. Charles is cross.

II.

PAST IMPERFECT.

Fatigué, tired. *Ennuyé*, wearied, bored.

I was tired and Arthur was wearied. My mother was here. Those people were bored. You were cross yesterday. Those lilies were beautiful.

III.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

Le professeur, teacher, master. *Parti*, gone away.
Arrêté, arrested, settled. *Après*, after.
Arrivé, arrived, come.

When I was gone away. After that he was gone away. As soon as the teachers were arrived. When it was settled. When you were tired.

IV.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Bien, très, fort, very.

He will be vexed that the post-office order is not come. You will be very tired. Yes, we shall be very wearied. You will be his favourite. No, Arthur and Alfred will be his favourites.

V.

CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT.

À, at. *Le libraire*, the bookseller.
Dans, in. *La librairie*, the bookshop.

I should be then at Paris. Thou wouldst be his teacher. You would be a soldier, and your cousin would be a bookseller. They would be in the bookshop. We should be in the garden.

VI.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sage, good, well-behaved, wise. *Un ami*, a friend.
Tranquille, quiet, calm.

Be thou good ! Let us be friends. Be wise ! Be quiet !

VII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

In order that I may be less tired. Although he be well behaved. I wish that we may be friends. It is necessary that you be quiet. Although they be in the bookshop.

VIII.

PRESENT PERFECT.

Ainsi, thus. *La bibliothèque*, the library.

Do you think that it was thus ? In order that she might be less weary, and that they might be content. Although you might be in the library.

IX.

COMPOUND TENSES.

You have been very cross. They had been very good. You will have been in the bookshop. No, I have been in the library. That would have been more wise. You have been to Paris. He will have been to Paris. They would have been very quiet and well behaved. He will have been absent.

X.

INFINITIVE.

To be wise. To be vexed. Being tired he was very quiet. My friend being here. To have been in the garden. Having been in the library.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PARLER, to speak.

Indicative.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I speak.

Je	parl- e
Tu	— es
Il	— e
Nous	— ons
Vous	— ez
Ils	— ent

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was speaking or did speak.

Je	parl- ais
Tu	— ais
Il	— ait
Nous	— ions
Vous	— iez
Ils	— aient

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I spoke.

Je	parl- ai
Tu	— as
Il	— a
Nous	— âmes
Vous	— âtes
Ils	— èrent

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall speak.

Je	parl- erai
Tu	— eras
Il	— era
Nous	— erons
Vous	— erez
Ils	— eront

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have spoken.

J'ai	parl- é
Tu as	— é
Il a	— é
Nous avons	— é
Vous avez	— é
Ils ont	— é

PAST PERFECT.

I had spoken.

J'avais	parl- é
Tu avais	— é
Il avait	— é
Nous avions	— é
Vous aviez	— é
Ils avaient	— é

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had spoken.

J'eus	parl- é
Tu eus	— é
Il eut	— é
Nous eûmes	— é
Vous eûtes	— é
Ils eurent	— é

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have spoken.

J'aurai	parl- é
Tu aura	— é
Il aura	— é
Nous aurons	— é
Vous aurez	— é
Ils auront	— é

Conditional.

IMPERFECT.

I should speak.

Je	parl-erais
Tu	— erais
Il	— erait
Nous	— erions
Vous	— eriez
Ils	— eraient

PERFECT.

I should have spoken.

J'aurais	parl-é
Tu aurais	— é
Il aurait	— é
Nous aurions	— é
Vous auriez	— é
Ils auraient	— é

Imperative.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Speak [thou].

Parl-e
Parl-ons
Parl-es

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may speak.

Que je	parl-e
Que tu	— es
Qu'il	— e
Que nous	— ions
Que vous	— iez
Qu'ils	— ent

PAST IMPERFECT.

That I might speak.

Que je	parl-asse
Que tu	— asses
Qu'il	—ût
Que nous	—ussions
Que vous	—ussiez
Qu'ils	—ussent

PRESENT PERFECT.

That I may have spoken.

Que j'aie	parl-é
Que tu aies	— é
Qu'il ait	— é
Que nous ayons	— é
Que vous ayez	— é
Qu'ils aient	— é

PAST PERFECT.

That I might have spoken.

Que j'eusse	parl-é
Que tu eusses	— é
Qu'il eût	— é
Que nous eussions	— é
Que vous eussiez	— é
Qu'ils eussent	— é

Infinitive.

PRESENT.

Parl-er, *to speak.*

PERFECT.

Avoir parl-é, *to have spoken.*

Participles.

PRESENT.	PAST (<i>variable</i>).
Parl-ant, <i>speaking</i> .	Parl-é, <i>éé, spoken</i> .

PERFECT.

Ayant parl-é, *having spoken*.

75. Notes on the First Conjugation.

Verbs in *eler* and *eter* double the last letter of their root when the next syllable is *mute*: ex. *appeler*, to call.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.	FUTURE IMPERFECT.
J'appel-le	J'appel-lerai, &c.
Tu appel-les	
Il appel-le	CONDITIONAL.
Nous appel-ons	J'appel-lerais, &c.
Vous appel-ez	
Ils appel-lent	

Other verbs which have in the infinitive *e* *mute* in the last syllable but one, do not double the last consonant of the root but change the *mute e* into *è* whenever the next syllable is not sounded: ex. *j'amène*, I bring; *il amènera*, he will bring, from *amener*, to bring.

The chief verbs which come under this head are *acheter*, to buy; *racheter*, to redeem; with their compounds; *harceler*, to harass; *bourreler*, to goad, prick; *peler*, to peel; *becqueter*, to peck; *modeler*, to model; *épousseter*, to dust; *étiqueter*, to ticket, to label.

Verbs with *é* in the last syllable but one of the infinitive also change this *é* into *è* whenever the next syllable is mute, except in the future and conditional:

Ex. *j'espère*, I hope; *il espère*, &c.

But, *nous espérons*, *vous espérez*, because the syllable after the accented *e* is sounded. *Ils espèrent* of course takes the grave accent.

Verbs ending in *éger*, as, *alléger*, to alleviate, follow *amener*: ex. *j'allège*, *que tu allèges*, &c.

Verbs in *ayer, eyer, uyer*, change the *y* into *i*, when followed by *e* mute, as *essayer*, to try; *essuyer*, to dry; *appuyer*, to lean, to support.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.	FUTURE IMPERFECT.	CONDITIONAL.
<i>I lean.</i>	<i>I shall lean.</i>	<i>J'appuierais, &c.</i>
<i>J'appuie</i>	<i>J'appuierai</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Tu appuies</i>	<i>Tu appuiera</i>	
<i>Il appuie</i>	<i>Il appuiera, &c.</i>	
<i>Nous appuyons, &c.</i>		
		<i>Que j'appuie, &c.</i>

The same verbs keep *i* after *y* in the first and second persons plural of the past imperfect of the indicative and present imperfect of the subjunctive: ex. *nous employions*, we were employing; *que vous essayiez*, that you may try.

Exercises on Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Porter, to carry } things. *La malle*, the box.
Apporter, to bring } *Le colis*, the package.

I am bringing the post-office order. She is carrying a child. Thou bringest the packages. We carry a basket. You are speaking to the children. They are carrying the boxes.

II.

PAST IMPERFECT.

Mener, to lead, take to } persons and creatures too large to carry.
Amener, to bring }
Le cheval, the horse. *L'aveugle*, the blind person (m. and f.).

I was leading the blind man. He was bringing my horse. We were carrying the basket. You were bringing the stamps. They were taking the children to the garden.

III.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

Le carton, handbox, pasteboard. *Lorsque*, when.

When I asked. Yesterday she brought the handbox. When

74 EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

thou broughtest the flowers. As soon as he brought the blind man. After that we carried the boxes. When you spoke. They brought the children.

IV.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Regarder, to look at.

Le nid, the nest.

Demander, to ask, or ask for, demand. *Que*, that, which, whom.

I will look at the nest. He will ask for the horse. We shall carry the pictures. You will look at my garden. The fruit which they will bring. The inkstand which you will carry. They will ask something.

V.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Arroser, to water.

Trouver, to find.

Un arrosoir, watering-pot.

I should find the nest. The ticket which thou wouldst bring. He would water the garden. The watering-pot which he would carry. You would find something. They would look at several books.

VI.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Speak to Arthur. Give the note. Find the letters. Water the flowers.

VII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Afin que, in order that.

Le jardinier, the gardener.

Gronder, to scold.

Écouter, to listen.

(*Que* may be used instead of *afin que*, *bien que*, *pour que*. It then governs the subjunctive, as all these conjunctions do, *whatever the tense may be in English*.)

I speak in order that they may listen. Speak, in order that we may find you. It is necessary that they carry the boxes. We listen, although you scold.

VIII.

PAST IMPERFECT.

He was speaking in order that she might bring the coffee. I called, although you scolded. We were vexed that he brought the tickets.

IX.

INFINITIVE.

Chanter, to sing. *Faux*, false, to sing out of tune.
Chanter juste, to sing in tune. *Fredonner*, to hum.

To hum an air. To sing an air. To sing out of tune. Singing in tune. Copying a letter. Speaking to the gardener.

X.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have brought the watering-pot. You have scolded the gardener. He had watered the garden. They had carried the letters. We shall have bought the horse. Thou wilt have copied the notes. They would have brought the child. Do you think that they have carried the packages? Although you would have asked for the atlas.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS, FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER, to go.

Ind. pres. imp. *je vais*, I go, I am going, *tu vas*, *il va*, *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont*.

Past imperfect, *j'allais*, I was going, *tu allais*, &c.

Past def. imp. *j'allai*, I went, *tu allas*, &c.

Fut. imp. *j'irai*, I shall go, *tu iras*, *il ira*, *nous irons*, *vous irez*, *ils iront*.

Cond. pres. imp. *j'irais*, *tu irais*, &c.

Imper. *va*, go, *allons*, *allez*.

Subj. pres. imp. *que j'aile*, that I may go, *que tu ailles*, *qu'il aille*, *que nous allions*, *que vous alliez*, *qu'ils aillent*.

Pres. imp. *que j'allasse*, that I might go, *que tu allasses*, *qu'il allât*, &c.

Infinitive, *aller*.

Participles, *allant*, *allé*.

The compound tenses are conjugated with *être* : ex. *je suis allé*. When the second person singular of the imperative is used with *y* or *en*, an *s* is added for euphony : ex. *vas-y*, go [thou] there, or *en, vas-en chercher*, go and seek for some. This rule holds good for the second person singular of the imperative of all verbs of the first conjugation. *S'en aller*, to go away, is conjugated in the same way.

Ind. pres. imp. *je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va, nous nous en allons, vous vous en allez, ils s'en vont.*

Present perf. *je m'en suis allé, I have gone away, nous nous en sommes allés, &c.*

Past imp. *je m'en allais, &c.*

Past perf. *je m'en étais allé, I had gone away, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je m'en allai, &c.*

Past def. perf. *je m'en fus allé, I had gone away, nous nous en fûmes allés, &c.*

Future imp. *je m'en irai, &c.*

Fut. perf. *je m'en serai allé, I shall have gone away.*

Cond. imp. *je m'en irais, &c.*

Cond. perf. *je m'en serais allé, &c., I should have gone away.*

Imper. *va-t'en, allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je m'en aille, &c.*

Pres. perf. *que je m'en sois allé, &c., that I may have gone away.*

Past imp. *que je m'en allasse, &c.*

Past perf. *que je m'en fusse allé, &c., that I might have gone away.*

Inf. pres. *s'en aller.*

Past. *s'en être allé.*

Part. pres. *s'en allant.*

Perfect, *s'en étant allé.*

ENVOYER.

Envoyer follows the rule already given for verbs ending in *yer*, but its future imperfect is *j'enverrai*, and its conditional *j'enverrais*, &c.

- VERBS IN *ger*.

Verbs in *ger* take *e* before *a* and *o* to keep the soft sound of the *g* : ex. *arranger*, to arrange ; *manger*, to eat ; *changer*, to change.

Ind. pres. imp. *je mang-e, tu mang-es, il mang-e, nous mang-eons, vous mang-ez, ils mang-ent.*

Past imp. *je mang-eais, tu mang-eais, il mang-eait, nous mang-ions, vous mang-iez, ils mang-eaient.*

Past def. imp. *je mang-eai, tu mang-eas, il mang-ea, nous mang-eâmes, vous mang-eâtes, ils mang-èrent.*

Imper. *mang-e, mang-eons, mang-ez.*

Subj. past imp. *que je mang-easse, que tu mang-easses, qu'il mang-eât, que nous mang-eassions, que vous mang-eassiez, qu'ils mang-eassent.*

Pres. part. *mang-eant.*

The tenses omitted are regular.

VERBS IN *cer*.

Verbs in *cer* change *c* into *ç* before inflections beginning with *a* and *o*, to keep the sound of the *c* like that of *s* : ex. *tracer*, to trace.

Ind. pres. imp. *je trace, &c., nous traçons, vous tracez, &c.*

Past imp. *je traç-ais, tu traç-ais, il traç-ait.*

Past def. imp. *je traç-ai, tu traç-as, il traç-a, nous traç-âmes, vous traç-âtes, ils trac-èrent.*

Imper. *trac-e, traç-ons, trac-ez.*

Subj. past imp. *que je traç-asse, que tu traç-asses, qu'il traç-ât, que nous traç-assions, que vous traç-assiez, qu'ils traç-assent.*

Pres. part. *traç-ant.*

VERBS IN *ier*.

Verbs ending in *ier* take *ii* in the first and second person plural of the past imperfect, indicative, and of the subjunctive present imperfect : ex. *nous copions, que vous oubliiez.*

Exercises on Aller and S'en Aller.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

(*Aller* takes no preposition before another verb : ex. *je vais lire*, I am going to read.)

Aller à quelqu'un, to suit some one ; to go towards some one.

Aller chez quelqu'un, to go to some one's house.

Chez, home, to, or at the house of.

Chez moi, chez toi, &c., to, or at my, thy house.

I am going to Paris, Thou goest to Troyes to-morrow. Is he going to bring the flowers? We are going to sing. I am going away to-morrow. He is going to my house. The teacher is going away to-day.

II.

PAST IMPERFECT.

La robe, the dress.

À quelle heure? at what o'clock?

À une heure, at one o'clock. *À deux heures*, at two o'clock.

I was going to sell my horse. She was going away at three o'clock. The dress used to suit Valentine. They were going to receive the tax.

III.

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

Sans, without.

Tout à l'heure, just now, presently, by-and-by.

I went to Rheims yesterday. You went away without Charles. They went to Versailles just now.

IV.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Sous peu, shortly, in a little while. *Bientôt*, soon.

I shall go away presently. Thou wilt go away soon. He will not go to thy house next Saturday. We shall go away in a little while. Will they go soon?

V.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I should not go without you. The dress would suit Gertrude. They would go to my house at six o'clock.

VI.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Go away! Go (thou) there. Let us go to Versailles.

VII.

SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

In order that I may go home. Do you think the dress may fit
Although you may go in a little while.

VIII.

PAST IMPERFECT.

It was necessary that he should go to Troyes. It seemed that
they might go away.

IX.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To go away in a little while. Going away soon. They spoke
while going away.

X.

COMPOUND TENSES.

(I went, thou wentest, &c., is often rendered by *je suis allé, tu es allé, &c.*)

I had not gone home. I went yesterday to Dijon. He went to
my house. I should have gone yesterday. That I may have gone
to my house. That you may have gone to Paris.

Exercises on Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation.

Le coude, the elbow.

La balle, the ball.

Jeter, to throw.

I am calling the gardener. He was not calling you. You will
call Edmée. He brings the children. We were copying the sum.
I shall bring the blind man. Do they buy a vessel? I shall peel
the orange (f.). They will model a statue (f.). Is he dusting my
books? He hopes that she will buy the atlas. We were hoping to
go. I throw the ball. He throws an orange. We are throwing
flowers. Who is leaning on his elbow? I am drying the table. They
are not drying it. He tries to (*de*) sing. We tried to sing in tune.
I shall try to go. He will try to speak. Try to dust the slates.
Let us try to peel the orange. That he may throw the ball. That
we may bring the teachers. That I might call the postman. That
the pigeons might pick the grain. That they might eat it. That you
might arrange it. That he might change the book. Eating fruit
Changing the balls, Arranging the dress. While tracing it.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

FINIR, to finish.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I finish.

Je	fin-is
Tu	— is
Il	— it
Nous	— iss- <i>ons</i>
Vous	— iss- <i>ez</i>
Ils	— iss- <i>ent</i>

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was finishing.

Je	fin-iss- <i>ais</i>
Tu	— iss- <i>ais</i>
Il	— iss- <i>ait</i>
Nous	— iss- <i>ions</i>
Vous	— iss- <i>iez</i>
Ils	— iss- <i>aient</i>

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I finished.

Je	fin- <i>is</i>
Tu	— <i>is</i>
Il	— <i>it</i>
Nous	— <i>îmes</i>
Vous	— <i>îtes</i>
Ils	— <i>irent</i>

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall finish.

Je	fin-ir- <i>ai</i>
Tu	— ir- <i>as</i>
Il	— ir- <i>a</i>
Nous	— ir- <i>ons</i>
Vous	— ir- <i>ez</i>
Ils	— ir- <i>ont</i>

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have finished.

J'ai	fin- <i>i</i>
Tu as	— <i>i</i>
Il a	— <i>i</i>
Nous avons	— <i>i</i>
Vous avez	— <i>i</i>
Ils ont	— <i>i</i>

PAST PERFECT.

I had finished.

J'avais	— <i>i</i>
Tu avais	— <i>i</i>
Il avait	— <i>i</i>
Nous avions	— <i>i</i>
Vous aviez	— <i>i</i>
Ils avaient	— <i>i</i>

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had finished.

J'eus	fin- <i>i</i>
Tu eus	— <i>i</i>
Il eut	— <i>i</i>
Nous eûmes	— <i>i</i>
Vous eûtes	— <i>i</i>
Ils eurent	— <i>i</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have finished.

J'aurai	fin- <i>i</i>
Tu auras	— <i>i</i>
Il aura	— <i>i</i>
Nous aurons	— <i>i</i>
Vous aurez	— <i>i</i>
Ils auront	— <i>i</i>

Conditional.

IMPERFECT.

I should finish.

Je	fin-ir-ais
Tu	— ir-ais
Il	— ir-ait
Nous	— ir-ions
Vous	— ir-iez
Ils	— ir-aient

PERFECT.

I should have finished.

J'aurais	fin-i
Tu aurais	— i
Il aurait	— i
Nous aurions	— i
Vous auriez	— i
Ils auraient	— i

Imperative.

PRESENT.

Finish [thou].

Fin-is

. . . .

— iss-ons

— iss-ez

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may finish.

Que je	fin-iss-e
Que tu	— iss-es
Qu'il	— iss-e
Que nous	— iss-ions
Que vous	— iss-iez
Qu'ils	— iss-ent

PRESENT PERFECT.

That I may have finished.

Que j'aie	fin-i
Que tu aies	— i
Qu'il ait	— i
Que nous ayons	— i
Que vous ayez	— i
Qu'ils aient	— i

PAST IMPERFECT.

That I might finish.

Que je	fin-isse
Que tu	— isses
Qu'il	— ôt
Que nous	— issions
Que vous	— issiez
Qu'ils	— issent

PAST PERFECT.

That I might have finished.

Que j'eusse	fin-i
Que tu eusses	— i
Qu'il eût	— i
Que nous eussions	— i
Que vous eussiez	— i
Qu'ils eussent	— i

Infinitive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

To finish.

Fin-ir

PRESENT PERFECT.

To have finished.

Avoir fin-i

SECOND CONJUGATION.

FINIR *to finish.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I finish.

Je	fin-iss
Tu	—ss
Il	—ss
Nous	—iss-ous
Vous	—iss-tes
Ils	—iss-ent

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have finished.

J'ai	fin-i
Tu as	—i
Il a	—i
Nous avons	—i
Vous avez	—i
Ils ont	—i

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was finishing.

Je	fin-iss-ais
Tu	—iss-ais
Il	—iss-ait
Nous	—iss-ions
Vous	—iss-iez
Ils	—iss-aient

PAST PERFECT.

I had finished.

J'avais	—i
Tu avais	—i
Il avait	—i
Nous avions	—i
Vous aviez	—i
Ils avaient	—i

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I finished.

Je	fin-iss
Tu	—iss
Il	—it
Nous	—imes
Vous	—ites
Ils	—irent

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had finished.

J'eus	fin-i
Tu eus	—i
Il eut	—i
Nous eûmes	—i
Vous eûtes	—i
Ils eurent	—i

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall finish.

Je	fin-ir-ai
Tu	—ir-as
Il	—ir-a
Nous	—ir-ons
Vous	—ir-ez
Ils	—ir-ont

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have finished.

J'aurai	fin-i
Tu auras	—i
Il aura	—i
Nous aurons	—i
Vous aurez	—i
Ils auront	—i

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

41

IMPERFECT.
I should finish.
 Je fin-ir-ais
 Tu — ir-ais
 Il — ir-ait
 Nous — ir-ions
 Vous — ir-iez
 Ils — ir-aient

Conditional

PRESENT.
I should have finished.
 J'aurais fin-i
 Tu aurais — i
 Il aurait — i
 Nous aurions — i
 Vous auriez — i
 Ils auraient — i

Imperative.

PRESENT.
Finish (thou).
 Fin-is

....
 — iss-ent
 — iss-ent

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may finish.
 Que je fin-iss-e
 Que tu — iss-es
 Qu'il — iss-e
 Que nous — iss-ions
 Que vous — iss-iez
 Qu'ils — iss-ent

PRESENT PERFECT.

That I may have finished.
 Que j'aie fin-i
 Que tu aies — i
 Qu'il ait — i
 Que nous ayons — i
 Que vous ayez — i
 Qu'ils aient — i

PAST IMPERFECT.

That I might finish.
 Que je fin-iss-e
 Que tu — iss-es
 Qu'il — iss-e
 Que nous — iss-ions
 Que vous — iss-iez
 Qu'ils — iss-ent

PAST PERFECT.

That I might have finished.
 Que j'eusse fin-i
 Que tu eusses — i
 Qu'il eût — i
 Que nous eussions — i
 Que vous eussiez — i
 Qu'ils eussent — i

Infinitive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

To finish.
 -ir

PRESENT PERFECT.

To have finished.
 Avoir fin-i

Participles.

PRESENT.

Finishing.

Fin-iss-ant

PAST (*variable*).

Fin-i

PERFECT.

Having finished.

Ayant fin-i.

DORMIR, to sleep.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I sleep.

Je dor-s

Tu — s

Il — t

Nous — m-ons

Vous — m-es

Ils — m-ent

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was sleeping.

Je dorm-ais

Tu — ais

Il — ait

Nous — ions

Vous — iez

Ils — aient

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I slept, &c.

Je dorm-is, &c.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall sleep, &c.

Je dorm-ir-ai, &c.

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have slept.

J'ai dorm-i, &c.

PAST PERFECT.

I had slept.

J'avais dorm-i, &c.

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had slept, &c.

J'eus dorm-i, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have slept, &c.

J'aurai dorm-i, &c.

Conditional.

IMPERFECT.

*I should sleep, &c.**Je dorm-ir-ais, &c.*

PERFECT.

*I should have slept, &c.**J'aurais dorm-i, &c.*

Imperative.

PRESENT.

Dors, sleep [thou].

.....

*Dorm-ons**Dorm-ez*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

*That I may sleep, &c.**Que je dorm-e**Que tu — es**Qu'il — e**Que nous — ions**Que vous — iez**Qu'ils — ent*

PAST IMPERFECT.

*That I might sleep, &c.**Que je dorm-isse, &c.*

PRESENT PERFECT.

*That I may have slept, &c.**Que j'aie dorm-i, &c.*

PAST PERFECT.

*That I might have slept, &c.**Que j'eusse dorm-i, &c.*

Conjugate in the same way all compounds of *dormir*, as *endormir*, to lull to sleep, as well as *mentir*, to tell a lie; *se repentir de*, to repent of; *partir*, to set out; *sentir*, to feel; *sortir*, to go out; *servir*, to serve; with their compounds.

Ressortir, to be under the jurisdiction of; *assortir*, to match colours, &c.; *répartir*, to divide; and *asservir*, to enslave, are conjugated like *finir*.

76. Notes on the Second Conjugation.

It will be observed that in the first example of verbs of this conjugation, in five tenses the syllable *i* or *iss* appears between the root and the inflexion. The verbs, numbering about three hundred, which follow this model belong to the

class known as *Inceptive Verbs*, and in Latin imply a gradual increase in the action which the verb expresses, as *rubescere*, to grow redder and redder. In the French verbs *esc* has become *iss* before a vowel, and *i* before a consonant. It does not, however, appear in the infinitive, and consequently not in the future and conditional, which are derived from that mood, nor in the past definite, nor its dependent tense, the past imperfect of the subjunctive.

Bénir, to bless or consecrate, has two past participles, *béni*, blessed, and *bénit*, consecrated, as *une famille bénie du ciel*, a family blessed by heaven; *eau bénite*, holy water.

Faillir is hardly used except in the infinitive and past participle, and the past definite. It appears in many idioms; ex. *j'ai failli tomber*, I nearly fell; *peu s'en fallut qu'il ne mourût*, he was at the point of death. When *faillir* means 'to become bankrupt,' it is conjugated like *finir*. *Défaillir*, to faint away, is used only in the infinitive; *s'évanouir*, or *tomber en défaillance*, supplying other moods and tenses.

Férir is only used in the idiom *sans coup férir*, without striking a blow.

Fleurir, to flourish, is conjugated like *finir*, and is regular; the figurative meaning, ex. *une santé florissante*, flourishing health, is expressed by the imperfect and participle present of the old verb *florir*: *je florissais*, &c. *florissant*. The root is the Latin *florere*, while *fleurir* comes from *fleur*.

Gésir, to lie down, is an intransitive and defective verb, used only in the third person singular and plural; as *il git*, he lies; *ci-git*, here lies, generally used in epitaphs; *le tout git en cela*, the whole point lies in that; *il gisait malade*, he was lying ill.

Hair is only irregular with respect to the *tréna*, which is used in some tenses and persons only. The past perfect and compound tenses are seldom used.

Issir, to spring from, is obsolete, but its past participle, *issu*, still survives.

When *mourir* expresses the suffering of the subject, it is used reflectively; ex. *elle se meurt*, she is in a dying state; but, *elle est morte*, she is dead; *elle meurt*, she is at the point of death. It is also used figuratively, to express strong desire, as *je meurs d'envie d'y aller*, I am dying with longing to go.

Oùir, to hear, is only used in the infinitive and past participle, and rarely in the past definite and imperfect subjunctive. From the now obsolete imperative, *oyez*, comes the English *O yes!* uttered by criers and others before some public announcement. In compound tenses it is used with *dire*: ex. *j'ai ouï dire*, I have heard it said. *Entendre dire*, or *apprendre*, usually replaces it: *j'apprends que vous partez*, I hear you are going away. *J'entends dire qu'il est malade*, I hear he is ill.

Venir de has the meanings of 'coming from a place:' ex. *je viens de Rouen*, I come from Rouen; and to have just done something: ex. *il venait d'écrire quand j'arrivai*, he had just been writing when I arrived.

Vêtir, to clothe, and **revêtir**, to invest, to put on, are regular, except in the past participle, *rêtu* and *revêtu*. The former is only used in the infinitive and past participle; *habiller*, to dress, supplying the other tenses. **Investir**, to invest, and **travestir**, to disguise, are regular.

A. Exercises on Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Choisir, to choose.

Bâtir, to build.

Le magasin, the shop.

Le bâtiment, the building, vessel.

I am choosing an air to sing. He finishes his letter. They choose a book. You are building a ship. We are choosing a ribbon. Who is building that shop? They are finishing the buildings

II.

PAST IMPERFECT.

Punir, to punish.

Guérir, to cure.

Le rhume, the cold.

Le médecin, the doctor.

Le malade, the invalid.

The pupil whom I was punishing. The shop which thou wast building. He was finishing his letters. We were choosing this atlas. You were curing a cold. No, the doctors were curing the invalid.

III.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

La médecine, the medicine.

Le pharmacien, the chemist.

When I chose that box. Who built the ship? We chose the fruit. The doctors cured the chemist,

IV.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Obéir à, to obey.*Le perron*, the flight of steps.

Shall I cure that invalid? Thou wilt choose some honey. The chemist whom he will cure. The flight of steps that we shall build. You will obey your teacher. They will not obey their doctor.

V.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I should fill the basket. Thou wouldst fulfil thy task. He would build a shop. The children whom you would punish. The flowers that they would choose. We should finish the sums.

VI.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not finish the note. Obey the doctor. Let us choose a watering-pot.

VII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

En cas que, in case } govern subj. *La toue*, the cough.
Je doute que, I doubt that }

In case that I may choose the tickets. I doubt that he cures the cough. Although we may obey. I wish that you may fulfil your task. In order that they may not punish the child.

VIII.

PAST IMPERFECT.

I should like that he should choose a reward. Although we should cure the invalid. In case that the chemist should build a shop. In order that the children should obey their master. Though you should choose a horse.

IX.

INFINITIVE.

To choose some fruit. To obey a teacher. Building a vessel. Choosing a doctor. Fulfilling a task. Filling the basket.

X.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have chosen a pen. Arthur has cured the invalid. We have

built a flight of steps. You had finished your sum. They had chosen the skates. I shall cure Charles! It will have finished the nest. You will have obeyed the doctor. We should have filled the copy-book. They would have finished the vessel. In order that you might have chosen the roses. Having finished my book. Having chosen a reward. Having cured the coughs.

B. Exercises on the Second Form of the Second Conjugation.

Partir, to set out from.

Sortir de, to go out.

Partir pour, to set out for.

Servir, to wait on, bring up a meal.

Sentir, to feel, to smell.

Le dîner, the dinner.

The child is lying. He sets out for Tou'lon. You are sleeping in the garden. They wait on the teacher. I was going out yesterday. Thou wast bringing up the dinner. They were smelling the roses. I went out. You set out for Rheims. We set out from Caen. He will go out. I should wait on my father. Sleep, my child. Let them sleep. That I may set out. That he may bring up the dinner. That we may set out for Poitiers. That you may wait on your mother. That they may smell these flowers. That the child might sleep. Although you might go to Bordeaux.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUÉRIR, to acquire.

All verbs are to be conjugated with *avoir*, unless *être* is specified.

Ind. pres. imp. *j'acquiers, -iers, -iert, nous acquérons, -érez, -ièrent.*

Past imp. *j'acquerais, &c., nous acquérions, &c.*

Past def. imp. *j'acquies, -is, -it, nous acquies, -îtes, -irent.*

Fut. imp. *j'acquerrai, -erras, -erra, nous acquerrons, &c.*

Cond. imp. *j'acquerrais, &c.*

Imper. *acquiers, -érons, -érez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que j'acqu-ière, -ières, -ière, -érions, -ériez, -ièrent.*

Past imp. *que j'acqu-isse, &c., que nous acqu-issions, &c.*

Infín. *acquérir.*

Part. *acqu-érant, acqu-is.*

BOUILLIR, to boil.

Ind. pres. imp. *je bou-s, -s, -t, nous bouill-ons, ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je bouill-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je bouill-is, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.*

Fut. imp. *je bouill-ir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je bouill-ir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *bou-s, bouill-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je bouill-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.*

Past imp. *que je bouill-isse, &c.*

Infín. *bouillir.*

Part. *bouill-ant, bouill-i.*

This verb, being neuter, when used in an active sense must be employed with the verb *faire*, as, *boil some water, faites bouillir de l'eau.*

COURIR, to run.

Ind. pres. imp. *je cour-s, -s, -t, -ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je cour-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je cour-us, -us, -ut, nous cour-ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.*

Fut. imp. *je cour-rai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je cour-raais, &c.*

Imper. *cour-s, -ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je cour-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.*

Past imp. *que je cour-usse, &c.*

Infín. *courir.*

Part. *cour-ant, cour-u.*

And all compounds, as *accourir*, to run up. *Accourir* is conjugated with *être*.

CUEILLIR, to gather.

Ind. pres. imp. *je cueill-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je cueill-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je cueill-is, -is, -it, -imes, -îtes, -irent.*

Fut. imp. *je cueill-erai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je cueill-erais, &c.*

Imper. *cueill-e, -ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je cueill-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.*

Past imp. *que je cueill-isse, &c.*

Inf. *cueill-ir.*

Part. *cueill-ant, cueill-i.*

Conjugate in the same manner *accueillir*, to welcome ;
recueillir, to collect together.

FAILLIR, to fail.

Ind. pres. imp. *je faux, tu faux, il faut, nous faill-ons, -ez, -ent, disused.*

Past imp. *je faillais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je faill-is, -is, -it, -imes, -îtes, -irent.*

Fut. imp. *je faill-ir-ai, &c., seldom used.*

Cond. imp. *je faill-ir-ais, &c.*

Imper. wanting.

Subj. wanting

Past imp. *que je faill-isse, &c.*

Inf. *faill-ir.*

Part. *faill-i.*

FUIR, to flee.

Ind. pres. imp. *je fui-s, -s, -t, nous fuy-ons, -ez, ils fui-ent.*

Past imp. *je fuy-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je fuis, tu fuis, il fuit, nous fuîmes, -îtes, -irent.*

Fut. imp. *je fuir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je fuir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *fuis, fuyons, fuyez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je fui-e, -es, -e, que nous fuyions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je fusse, &c.*

Inf. *fuir.*

Part. *fuyant, fui.*

MOURIR, to die.

(Conjugated with être.)

Ind. pres. imp. *je meur-s, -s, -t, nous mour-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je mour-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je mour-us, -us, -ut, nous mour-ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.*

Fut. imp. *je mour-rai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je mour-raïs, &c.*

Imper. *meur-s, mour-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je meur-e, -es, -e, que nous mour-ions, -iez, qu'ils meur-ent.*

Past imp. *que je mour-usse, &c.*

Inf. *mour-ir.*

Part. *mour-ant, mort.*

OFFRIR, to offer.

Ind. pres. imp. *j'offr-e, -es, -e, nous offr-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *j'offr-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *j'offr-is, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.*

Fut. imp. *j'offr-ir-ai, &c.*

Cond. Imp. *j'offr-ir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *offre, offr-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que j'offr-e, -es, -e, que nous offr-ions, -iez, -ent.*

Past imp. *que j'offr-isse, &c.*

Inf. *offr-ir.*

Part. *offr-ant, offert.*

OUIR, to hear. Defective.

Past def. imp. *j'oui-s, -s, -t, nous ouï-mes, ouï-tes, ouï-rent.*

Subj. past. imp. *que j'ouvrisse, &c.*

Inf. *ouvrir.*

Part. past. *ouvi.*

OUVRIR, to open.

Like *offrir.*

SOUFFRIR, to suffer.

Like *offrir.*

TENIR, to hold.

Ind. pres. imp. *je tiens, tiens, tient, nous ten-ons, -ez, tiennent.*

Past imp. *je tenais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je tins, tins, tint, nous tinmes, tinles, tinrent.*

Fut. imp. *je tiendrai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je tiendrais, &c.*

Imper. *tiens, ten-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je tienne, tiennes, tienne, que nous ten-ions, -iez, tiennent.*

Past imp. *que je tinsse, tinssez, tint, que nous tinssions, &c.*

Inf. *tenir.*

Part. *ten-ant, ten-u.*

With its compounds, *soutenir, to support, &c.*

VENIR and its compounds, *revenir, to come back, devenir, to become, &c. &c.*, follow *tenir*, but are conjugated with *être*.

TRESSAILLIR, to start.

Ind. pres. imp. *je tress-aill-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.*

Imper. *tress-aill-e, -ons, -ez.*

All the other tenses like *dormir*.

VÊTIR, to clothe.

Ind. pres. imp. *je vêt-s, tu vêt-s, il vêt.*

Past imp. *je vêt-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je vêt-is, &c., nous vêt-îmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je vêt-ir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je vêt-ir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *vêt-s, -ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je vêt-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.*

Past imp. *que je vêt-isse, &c.*

Infinitive. *vêtir.*

Part. *vêt-ant, vêt-u.*

Exercises on Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

I.

Les richesses, riches.

L'eau, water.

Lentement, slowly.

La bouilloire, the kettle.

Un œuf, an egg.

À la maison, home, at home.

He acquires a friend. Do we acquire riches? They are acquiring a library. I shall acquire money. The water boils. Make the kettle boil. While offering the eggs. I am running home. He runs in the garden. We ran to our mother. They ran to their teacher. Thou wilt run slowly. We would run to the bookshop. It was necessary that he should run more slowly. I gather roses. Does he gather something? We are gathering a lily. We copy a sum. We were copying these flowers.

II.

La bonne, the maid servant.

Devant, before.

La patrie, the country.

Faillir, to fail, often answers to have almost done something; *ex. j'ai failli tomber*, I almost fell. The second verb is then in the infinitive. It is chiefly used in compound tenses.

I almost sang out of tune. We almost died. We almost ran too [slowly]. He is flying home. They fly before the teacher. I shall fly to Paris. In order that I may fly before you. Although you might fly from your country.

III.

De froid, of cold.

D'envie, of envy, longing.

De faim, of hunger.

I am dying of cold. He is dying of envy. The pigeons are dying of hunger. They will die of envy if you offer the tickets.

He was offering the stamps. I shall offer the rolls. The ink which he will not offer. The watering-pot which he has offered. Open slowly. Let us open the package. They suffer from (*du*) cold. Who was suffering? It is I who suffered. Do I hold the child? He is not holding me. We hold the nest. They are holding the bandbox. I shall hold the oranges. That we may hold the balls. I have held the dress. They had held the kettle. Who comes? Our friends are coming. You are coming without her. They come slowly. He was not coming. I came from Blois. I shall come in a little while. They would come soon. Come soon! Let us come presently. Do you think that I come? Although he might come. I have come from home. Have you come slowly? They had come yesterday. He will have come shortly. While coming to Rheims. While coming here. I have just come. He had just finished. They had just spoken.

IV.

Will you not gather a bouquet? Are they running? Was he not flying? They would die of longing. Who has opened my basket? I offered it to you. Do not hold the kettle. Is he supporting her? Are they not come back? Will they become rich? Let us fly.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

DEVOIR, to owe.

Indicative.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I owe.

Je d-**ois**
 Tu — **ois**
 Il — **oit**
 Nous dev-**ons**
 Vous dev-**ez**
 Ils d-**oivent**

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have owed.

J'ai d-**û**
 Tu as — **û**
 Il a — **û**
 Nous avons — **û**
 Vous avez — **û**
 Ils ont — **û**

PAST IMPERFECT.*I was owing.*

Je	dev-ais
Tu	— ais
Il	— ait
Nous	— ions
Vous	— iez
Ils	— aient

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.*I owed.*

Je	d-us
Tu	— us
Il	— ut
Nous	— âmes
Vous	— âtes
Ils	— urent

FUTURE IMPERFECT.*I shall owe.*

Je	dev-rai
Tu	— ras
Il	— ra
Nous	— rons
Vous	— rez
Ils	— ront

[PAST PERFECT.*I had owed.*

J'avais	d-â
Tu avais	— â
Il avait	— â
Nous avions	— â
Vous aviez	— â
Ils avaient	— â

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.*I had owed.*

J'eus	d-â
Tu eus	— â
Il eut	— â
Nous eûmes	— â
Vous eûtes	— â
Ils eurent	— â

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have owed.*

J'aurais	d-â
Tu auras	— â
Il aura	— â
Nous aurons	— â
Vous aurez	— â
Ils auront	— â

Conditional.**PRESENT IMPERFECT.***I should owe.*

Je	dev-rais
Tu	— rais
Il	— rait
Nous	— rions
Vous	— riez
Ils	— raient

PRESENT PERFECT.*I should have owed.*

J'aurais	d-â
Tu aurais	— â
Il aurait	— â
Nous aurions	— â
Vous auriez	— â
Ils auraient	— â

Imperative.**PRESENT IMPERFECT.***Ove* [*thou*].

D-ois

. . . .

Dev-ons

— ez

Subjunctive.**PRESENT IMPERFECT.***That I may ove.*

Que je d-oive

Que tu — oives

Qu'il — oive

Que nous dev-ions

Que vous — iez

Qu'ils d-oivent

PAST IMPERFECT.*That I might ove.*

Que je d-usse

Que tu — usses

Qu'il —ût

Que nous —ussions

Que vous —ussiez

Qu'ils —ussent

PRESENT PERFECT.*That I may have owed.*

Que j'aie d-û

Que tu aies û

Qu'il ait —û

Que nous ayons —û

Que vous ayez —û

Qu'ils aient —û

PAST PERFECT.*That I might have owed.*

Que j'eusse d-û

Que tu eusses —û

Qu'il eût —û

Que nous eussions —û

Que vous eussiez —û

Qu'ils eussent —û

Infinitive.**PRESENT IMPERFECT.***To ove.*

Dev-oir

PRESENT PERFECT.*To have owed.*

Avoir d-û

Participles.**PRESENT.**

Dev-ant

PAST (variable).

D-û

PERFECT.

Ayant d-û

Exercise on Regular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Recevoir, to receive.

L'argent, the money.

I am receiving post-office orders. Thou oughtest to receive a reward. He is to go. He ought to bring the slates. She owes some money. We are to bring the table. You ought to speak. They receive the notes. The money which they owe.

II.

PAST IMPERFECT.

Apercevoir, to perceive.

Le loyer, the rent.

Decevoir, to deceive.

I was receiving the rent. Thou wert not deceiving the teacher. We were owing the rent. They were receiving a message.

III.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I received an invitation (f.). He perceived the mistake. We deceived him. You received a note. Did they receive the money?

IV.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Percevoir, to levy taxes.

Un impôt, a tax.

Le percepteur, the tax-gatherer.

I shall receive the taxes. The tax-gatherer will levy them. We shall perceive it. You will owe the rent.

V.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I should (*ought to*) bring the stamps. Thou shouldst speak to Alice. He would receive your visit. We ought to finish the sums. You would not owe money. They ought to bring my horse. They ought to go there.

VI.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may receive the message. In order that he may perceive his mistake. Although you deceived the tax-gatherer. That they may owe money.

VII.

PAST IMPERFECT.

Une réponse, an answer. *Quelque*, however, whatever;
quelques, pl.

That I might receive an answer. That he might perceive it. Although you might owe money. It seemed that they might receive answers. Whatever rewards you might receive.

VIII.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Répondre à, to answer to.

To answer a letter. To owe the rent. Receiving a book. Levying taxes.

IX.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have received your note. Thou hast owed a tax. The answer which they had had. The visit which he had received. The books which you will have received. I should (*ought to*) have gone to Paris. Thou shouldst (*oughtest to*) have answered the letter. Whatever mistake you may have perceived. Whatever taxes they may have levied. Although he might have received an invitation. This pupil must have received the books. You must have perceived the mistake. She is to finish the sum.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, to seat, to place, to sit.

This verb is more commonly used in its reflective form.

S'ASSEOIR, to sit down.

(Conjugated with *être*.)

Ind. pres. imp. *je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied, nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseyent.*

Past imp. *je m'asseyais, &c., nous nous asseyions, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je m'assis, tu t'assis, il s'assit, nous nous assîmes, vous vous assîtes, ils s'assirent.*

Fut. imp. *je m'assiérai, &c., nous nous assiérons, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je m'assiérais, &c., nous nous assiérions, &c.*

Imper. *assieds-toi, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je m'asseye, que tu t'asseyes, qu'il s'asseye, que nous nous asseyions, que vous vous asseyiez, qu'ils s'asseyent.*

Past imp. *que je m'assisse, &c., que nous nous assissions, &c.*

Infinitive. *s'asseoir.*

Participle. *s'asseyant, s'étant assis.*

CHOIR, to fall.

Like *déchoir*.

DÉCHOIR, to decay, fall.

(Conjugated with *avoir* to express an action, and with *être* to express a state.)

Ind. pres. imp. *je déch-ois, -ois, -oit, nous déch-oyons, -oyez, -oient.*

Past imp. *je déch-oyais, &c.*

Past def. perf. *je déch-us, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.*

Fut. imp. *je déch-errai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je déch-errais, &c.*

Imper. *déch-ois, -oyons, -oyez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je déch-oie, -oies, -ois, -oyions, -oyiez, -oient.*

Past imp. *que je déch-usse, &c.*

Infin. *déch-oir.*

Part. déchu. No present part.

ÉCHOIR, to fall due.

(Conjugated with either *avoir* or *être*.)

Like *déchoir*.

FALLOIR, to be necessary.

Ind. pres. imp. *il faut.*

Past imp. *il fallait.*

Past def. perf. *il fallut.*

Fut. imp. *il faudra.*

Cond. imp. *il faudrait.*

No imperative.

Subj. pres. imp. *qu'il faille.*

Past imp. *qu'il fallût.*

Infin. falloir. No pres. part.

Past part. fallu.

MOUVOIR, to move.

Ind. pres. imp. *je m-eus, -eus, -eut, nous mouv-ons, -ez, meuvent.*

Past imp. *je mouv-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je m-us, -us, -ut, nous m-ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.*

Fut. imp. *je mouv-rai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je mouv-raïs, &c.*

Imper. *m-eus, mouv-ons, mouv-ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je meuv-e, &c., que nous mouv-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je m-usse, &c.*

Infin. mouvoir.

Part. mouv-ant, mû.

*PLEUVOIR, to rain.***Ind. pres. imp.** *il pleut.***Past imp.** *il pleuvait.***Past def. perf.** *il plut.***Fut. imp.** *il pleuvra.***Cond. imp.** *il pleuvrait.*

No imperative.

Subj. pres. imp. *qu'il pleuve.***Past imp.** *qu'il plût.***Infín.** *pleuvoir.***Part.** *pleuvant, plu.**POUVOIR, to be able.***Ind. pres. imp.** *je peux or je puis, tu peux, il peut, nous pouv-ons, vous pouv-ez, ils peuvent.***Past imp.** *je pouv-ais, &c.***Past def. imp.** *je pus, -us, -ut, nous pûmes, &c.***Fut. imp.** *je pou-rrai, &c.***Cond. imp.** *je pou-rrais, &c.*

No imperative.

Subj. pres. imp. *que je p-uisse, -uisses, -uisse, que nous p-uissions, &c.***Past imp.** *que je p-usse, &c.***Infín.** *pouv-oir.***Part.** *pouv-ant, p-u.**SAVOIR, to know.***Ind. pres. imp.** *je s-ais, -ais, -ait, nous sav-ons, -ez, -ent.***Past imp.** *je sav-ais, &c.***Past def. imp.** *je s-us, &c., nous s-ûmes, &c.***Fut. imp.** *je s-aurai, &c.***Cond. imp.** *je s-aurais, &c.***Imper.** *s-ache, s-achons, s-achez.***Subj. pres. imp.** *que je s-ache, &c., que nous s-achions, &c.***Past imp.** *que je s-usse, &c.***Infín.** *s-avoir.***Part.** *s-achant, s-u.*

SEOIR, to be seated, and to be becoming.

Only used in the following forms :

Ind. pres. imp. *il sied, ils sièent.*

Past imp. *ils seyait, ils seyaient.* No past definite.

Fut. imp. *il siéra, ils siéront.*

Cond. imp. *il siérait, ils siéraient.*

Infin. *seoir.*

Part. past. *sis.*

VALOIR, to be worth.

Ind. pres. imp. *je v-aux, -aux, -aut, nous va-lons, -lez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je val-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je val-us, &c., nous val-ûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je va-udrai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je va-udrais, &c.*

Imper. *val-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je va-ille, &c., que nous val-ions, iez, vaillent.*

Past. imp. *que je val-usse, &c.*

Infin. *valoir.*

Part. *valant, valu.*

VOIR, to see.

Ind. pres. imp. *je voi-s, -s, -t, nous vo-yons, -yez, ils voi-ent.*

Past imp. *je voy-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je vis, &c., nous v-îmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je verrai.*

Cond. *je verrais, &c.*

Imper. *vois, voyons, voyez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je voie, &c., que nous voyions, voyiez, voient.*

Past imp. *que je visse, &c.*

Infin. *voir, voyant, vu.*

PRÉVOIR, to foresee, and **POURVOIR**, to provide, make in the future and conditional *je prévoirai, je prévoirais, &c., je pourvoirai, je pourvoirais, &c.*

VOULOIR, to be willing, to will.

Ind. pres. imp. *je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, -ez, ils veulent.*

Past imp. *je voul-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je voul-us, &c., nous voul-ûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je vou-drai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je vou-drais, &c.*

Imper. *veuill-ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je veuille, &c., que nous voulions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je voul-usse, &c.*

Infinitive. *vouloir.*

Part. *voul-ant, voul-u.*

77. Notes on the Third Conjugation.

DEVOIR takes a circumflex accent on its past participle to mark that it is contracted from the Latin *debitum*. Its proper meaning is *to owe*, but figuratively it means that something is one's duty :

Ex. je dois écrire mon pensum, I ought to write my imposition.

When **SHOULD** can be rendered by *ought*, it is rendered by *je devrais, tu devrais, &c.* :

Ex. ils devraient partir, they should start.

When it can be changed into *ought to have*, the compound tense *j'aurais dû, &c.*, is used, with the next verb in the infinitive :

As, il aurait dû écrire à son père, he ought to have written to his father.

When a tense of **HAVE TO** is followed by an infinitive, use *devoir* :

As je dois faire de grandes dépenses, I have to make (be at) great expense.

TO BE, followed by an infinitive, may either be rendered by *devoir* or *avoir à* :

Ex. elle doit venir chez nous, she is to come to us.

Elle a à s'en aller bientôt, she is to go away soon.

When **SHOULD** has the sense of *ought*, the conditional translates it :

As je devrais y aller, I should go there, that is, I ought to go there.

When **MUST** implies, not an order, but a suggestion, use the present imperfect of *devoir* for the present, and *must have* translate by the present perfect *j'ai dû*, &c., with the next verb in the infinitive :

Ex. ce garçon doit avoir cassé ce verre, this boy must have broken this glass.

Vous avez dû être bien en colère, you must have been very angry.

When the past imperfect of the subjunctive begins a sentence it means *even though* :

Ex. dussé-je vous affliger il faudra vous le dire, even though I should grieve you, one must say it to you.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN OIE end their past definite in *us*, and their past participle in *u*, except *asseoir*, which makes its past definite and past participle in *is*, and *voir*, the past definite of which is formed in *is*, but the past participle regularly in *u*.

Especial attention should be paid to *asseoir*, which presents great irregularities. It is both an active verb conjugated with *avoir*, and a reflective :

Ex. je m'assieds, I sit down, i.e. seat myself.

Choir and **déchoir** are chiefly used in the past participle, *chu*, *déchu*.

Déchoir and **échoir** are conjugated with *avoir* to express an action and *être* to express a state ; *ex. mon billet a échu le trente du mois dernier*, my bill fell due the thirtieth of last month. This shows the point of time when the bill became due. *Mon billet est échu* only means that it is due. *Il a déchu de jour en jour*, he has sunk lower from day to day. *Il y a longtemps qu'ils sont déchus de ces privilèges*, they have long forfeited these privileges. Littré gives neither the past imperfect nor present participle to this verb, but Bescherelle gives both.

Falloir is only used in the third person of each tense ; *ex. il me faut de l'argent*, I must have some money ; *il vous faudra y aller*, you will be obliged to go. This verb requires the next one dependent on it to be in the infinitive or the subjunctive ; *ex. il faut q'*

vous en soyez content, you must be satisfied with it. We find it the idiom *comme il faut*, properly.

Il me faut with an infinitive means, *I must do something*; ex. *i me faut lire*, I must read; while *il faut me lire* means that some one to whom I speak must read *to me*.

When *may*, *can*, *might* mean *to be able*, they are rendered by *pouvoir*; ex. *je le puis*, I may, or I can; *pourrais-tu sortir ce soir?* could you go out this evening? *Je peux* is used in conversation and in poetry, but *je puis* is commoner, and in questions *puis-je*, not *peux-je*, is to be used. *Might*, *could*, denoting a past time, require the past imperfect or perfect tenses, as *je pus le faire la semaine passée*, I could do it last week; *si je pourrais vous aider j'en serais charmé*, if I might help you I should be delighted. *Si before could* requires *pouvais*, &c. *J'ai pu chanter autrefois*, I could, or was able to, sing formerly. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present subjunctive of *pouvoir*; ex. *puisse-t-il réussir*, may he succeed.

Pouvoir, like *oser*, to dare, *cesser*, to cease, and *savoir*, to know, when used negatively, does not require *pas*, though it can take it to strengthen the negative; ex. *je ne peux le croire*, I cannot believe it; *je ne puis pas* expresses utter impossibility.

Savoir means both to *know*, and to *know how*; ex. *je sais ma leçon*, I know my lesson; *sais-tu patiner?* do you know how to skate? The conditional is often used instead of *je ne puis*; ex. *je ne saurais vous le dire*, I cannot tell you; *je ne saurais le voir*, I cannot see him. It is idiomatical, used with *gré*; ex. *je vous en sais gré*, I take it kindly of you; *faites moi savoir*, tell me.

Sesoir in the sense of being seated is no longer used. But we find it in *ses terres sont sises en Espagne*, his estates are situated in Spain. When it has the meaning of 'being becoming,' it is still often used, as *cette couleur vous sied à ravir*, this colour becomes you charmingly; *son amazone lui seyait admirablement*, her riding-habit became her admirably; *il ne vous sied pas de me parler ainsi*, it does not become you to speak thus to me.

Will or *will have*, in the sense of being willing, are expressed by the present imperfect of *vouloir*, and *would* or *would have* by the past imperfect: ex. *voulez-vous me dire quelle heure il est?* will you tell me what time it is? *je le veux bien*, I will; *il voulait s'y rendre*, he wished to go there.

The conditional of *vouloir* is used to express *I wish*, *I should like*: ex. *je voudrais le faire tout de suite*, I wished to do it directly; *ils voudraient le revoir*, they would like to see him again.

Veuillez, though an imperative, means, be so kind: ex. *revuillez aller me chercher l'échiquier*, be so kind as to fetch me the chess-board. *Je veux*, &c. has also the meaning of 'it is my will.' *Je veux le faire*, I choose to do it, or I am willing to do it.

Exercise on Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

Le banc, the bank, bench.

La chaise, the chair.

Le gazon, the turf.

Sur, on.

Trop, too much.

Tard, late.

You sit on the bench and we are sitting on the turf. Who sits on the chair? They will sit on the bank. I was sitting on the sofa. Let us sit here. Sit (down). That you may sit on this chair.

My rent is due; it fell due last Monday. Mine will be due shortly. It is necessary to go away. I must have the chair. You must buy the dictionary. I shall be obliged to come. You would be obliged to fly. It is raining to-day and it will rain to-morrow: it is necessary to go home.

I can hold the watering-pot. Who can come? Can we sleep? You can buy the ink. They can run home. I was able to go. He could (was able to) do the sum. If I could sing. If you could come you would be too late. If they could go they would be here. I was able to read. You were able to go home. I cannot go. May he be able to have it!

I know that you are going away. Who knows the lesson? I cannot tell you. We know how to calculate. I knew that. I shall know my lesson. Know that he is come! That you may know it. That I might know it. Tell me if they are seated. Knowing that he was here I went away. Having known it I was able to hope.

This dress suits you. It does not become you to scold the children.

I see the gardener and he sees me. We see the nests. Do they see your ship? I saw my father yesterday. I shall see you next Sunday. Let me see the eggs. Go, that you may see the roses. Run, that he may see the horses. I was sitting down that he might see better. They came that you might see the letter. While seeing the soldiers. I have not seen your library.

I am willing to go. He wills it. I was wishing to eat the fruit. If I wished to go she would come. I should like to see you. He would like to open the note. Be so kind as to see who is speaking. Be so kind as to come directly.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

VENDRE, to sell.

Indicative.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I sell.

Je	vend- s
Tu	— s
Il	—
Nous	— ons
Vous	— ez
Ils	— ent

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was selling.

Je	vend- ais
Tu	— ais
Il	— ait
Nous	— ions
Vous	— iez
Ils	— aient

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I sold.

Je	vend- is
Tu	— is
Il	— it
Nous	— îmes
Vous	— îtes
Ils	— irent

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall sell.

Je	vend- rai
Tu	— ras
Il	— ra
Nous	— rons
Vous	— rez
Ils	— ront

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have sold.

J'ai	vend- u
Tu as	— u
Il a	— u
Nous avons	— u
Vous avez	— u
Ils ont	— u

PAST PERFECT.

I had sold.

J'avais	vend- u
Tu avais	— u
Il avait	— u
Nous avions	— u
Vous aviez	— u
Ils avaient	— u

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had sold.

J'eus	vend- u
Tu eus	— u
Il eut	— u
Nous eûmes	— u
Vous eûtes	— u
Ils eurent	— u

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have sold.

J'aurai	vend- u
Tu auras	— u
Il aura	— u
Nous aurons	— u
Vous aurez	— u
Ils auront	— u

Conditional.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I should sell.

Je	vend-rai
Tu	— rai
Il	— rait
Nous	— rions
Vous	— riez
Ils	— raient

PRESENT PERFECT.

I should have sold.

J'aurais	vend-u
Tu aurais	— u
Il aurait	— u
Nous aurions	— u
Vous auriez	— u
Ils auraient	— u

Imperative.

Sell [thou].

Vend-s

.

— -ons

— -ez

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may sell.

Que je	vend-e
Que tu	— es
Qu'il	— e
Que nous	— ions
Que vous	— iez
Qu'ils	— ent

PRESENT PERFECT.

That I may have sold.

Que j'aie	vend-u
Que tu aies	— u
Qu'il ait	— u
Que nous ayons	— u
Que vous ayez	— u
Qu'ils aient	— u

PAST IMPERFECT.

That I might sell.

Que je	vend-isse
Que tu	— isses
Qu'il	— it
Que nous	— issions
Que vous	— issiez
Qu'ils	— issent

PAST PERFECT.

That I might have sold.

Que j'eusse	vend-u
Que tu eusses	— u
Qu'il eût	— u
Que nous eussions	— u
Que vous eussiez	— u
Qu'ils eussent	— u

Infinitive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

To sell.

Vend-re

PRESENT PERFECT.

To have sold.

Avoir vend-u

108 EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Participles.

PRESENT.

Selling.

Vend-ant

PAST (*variable*).

Sold.

Vend-u

PERFECT.

Having sold.

Ayant vend-u

Exercises on Regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

I.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

Perdre, to lose.

Défendre, to defend; *défendre*

Attendre, to wait, expect.

à, to forbid.

Attendre quelqu'un, to expect

Le temps, the time.

or wait for some one.

Tout, everything, all.

I am losing my time. He expects you. You lose everything.
We defend the cause (f.). They are waiting for some one, and they
are losing their time.

II.

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was selling flowers. Thou wert losing money. She was not
expecting the children. You were forbidding Charles to (*de*) go
out. They were losing their reward.

III.

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

Entendre, to hear, to understand.

Répondre à, to answer a person
or thing.

Une réponse, an answer.

He lost my skates. He forbade it. We answered the question (f).
You expected an answer. They heard it.

IV.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Aujourd'hui, to day.

Dimanche prochain, next Sunday

Demain, to morrow.

Lundi, Monday.

I shall expect Gertrude to-day. Thou wilt understand all th
e will expect an answer next Sunday. We shall hear the

EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. 109

air to-morrow. No, you will hear it next Monday. Will they answer the notes?

V.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Volontiers</i> , willingly.	<i>Samedi</i> , Saturday.
<i>Jeudi</i> , Thursday.	<i>Mercredi</i> , Wednesday
<i>Vendredi</i> , Friday.	

I should wait willingly. He would not defend you. We should expect the teacher next Wednesday. You would lose all. They would forbid it to the pupils.

VI.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Wait! Let us hear the conversation. Answer to-morrow.

VII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT IMPERFECT.

In order that I may sell the fruit. That thou mayest wait. Although he may lose his friend. I wish that we may sell it. It is necessary that you answer. Do you think that they are waiting?

VIII.

PAST IMPERFECT.

<i>Jusqu'à ce que</i> , until	} govern subj.
<i>Avant que</i> , before	

Until I came. Before he sold his books. I should like that we should receive his visit. It was necessary that you should wait. In order that they might listen willingly.

IX.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

En (used with participle present), while.

To hear the conversation. To lose the pencils. While receiving the visits. While expecting some one. Having lost my book. Having expected the doctor.

X.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have sold the medicine. You have lost courage. Who expects an imposition? You had defended your friend. As soon as we h

lost the basket. Arthur and Alice will have expected your visit. We should have heard the sermon. They would have sold several rose-trees. Although he has lost his money. -Until you had waited.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

BOIRE, to drink.

Ind. pres. imp. *je bois, bois, boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.*

Past imp. *je buvais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je bus, &c., nous bûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je boir-ai.*

Cond. imp. *je boir-ais.*

Imper. *bois, buvons, buvez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je boi-ve, -ves, -ve, que nous bu-vions, -vies, boivent.*

Past imp. *que je busse, &c.*

Infinitive. *boire.*

Part. present. *buvant, bu.*

BRUIRE, to resound, rattle, roar.

Only used in the following tenses and persons :

Ind. pres. imp. *il bruit.*

Pres. imp. *il bruy-ait, ils bruy-aient.*

Infinitive. *bruire.*

Part. present. *bruyant.*

CLORE, to close.

Used only in the following forms :

Ind. pres. *je clo-s, tu clo-s, il clo-t.*

Fut. imp. *je clor-ai, &c., nous clor-ons, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je clor-ais, &c., nous clor-ions, &c.*

Imper. *clos.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je close, -es, -e, que nous closions, &c.*

Infin. *clorre.*

Past part. *clos.*

CONCLURE, to conclude.

Ind. pres. imp. *je conclu-s, -s, -t, nous conclu-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je conclu-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je conclu-s, &c., nous conclûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je conclur-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je conclur-ais, &c.*

Imper. *conclu-s, conclu-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je conclu-e, &c., que nous conclu-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je conclu-sse, &c., que nous conclusions, &c.*

Infin. *conclure.*

Part. *conclu-ant, conclu.*

CONFIRE, to pickle.

Ind. pres. imp. *je confis-s, -s, -t, nous confis-sons, -sez, -sent.*

Past imp. *je confis-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je confis-s, &c., nous confîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je confir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je confir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *confis-s, -sons, -sez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je confis-e, &c., que nous confisions, &c.*

Past Imp. *que je confis-se, &c.*

Infin. *confire.*

Part. *confis-ant, confit.*

CONNAÎTRE, to know, to be acquainted with.

Ind. pres. imp. *je conn-ais, -ais, -ait, nous connais-sons, -sez, -sent.*

Past imp. *je connais-sais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je conn-us, -us, -ut, nous connûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je connaîtr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je connaîtr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *connai-s, connais-sons, connais-sez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je connai-se, &c., que nous connaissions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je conn-usse, &c., que nous conn-ussions, &c.*

Infin. *connait-re.*

Part. *connai-ssant, conn-u.*

Reconnaître, to recognise, and the other derivatives of *connaître*, follow this model, as also does *paraître*, to appear, with its compounds.

COUDRE, to sew.

Ind. pres. imp. *je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent.*

Past imp. *je cous-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je cous-is, &c., nous cous-imes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je coudr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je coudr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *coud-s, cous-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je cous-e, &c., que nous cous-ions, &c.*

Past. imp. *que je cous-isse, &c., que nous cous-issions, &c.*

Infin. *coud-re.*

Part. *cous-ant, cous-u.*

CRAINdre, to fear.

Ind. pres. imp. *je crain-s, -s, -t, nous craign-ons, ez, -ent.*

Past. imp. *je craign-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *craign-is, &c., nous craign-imes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je craindr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je craindr-ais.*

Imper. *crain-s, craign-ons, craign-ez.*

Subj. pres. *que je craign-e, &c., que nous craign-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je craign-isse, &c., que nous craign-issions, &c.*

Infin. *craind-re.*

Part. *craign-ant, crain-t.*

The following verbs follow *craindre* :

Astreindre à, to oblige.

Atteindre à, to reach.

Ceindre, &c., to gird.

Contraindre à, to constrain.

Enfreindre, to infringe.

Éteindre, to extinguish.

Féindre, to feign.

Joindre, &c., to join.

Oindre, to anoint.

Peindre, &c., to paint.

Poindre, to dawn.

Restreindre, to restrain.

Teindre, &c., to dye.

Poindre is chiefly used in the infinitive ; ex. *le jour va poindre*, day is about to dawn.

CROIRE, to believe.

Ind. pres. imp. *je croi-s, -s, -t, nous croy-ons, -ez, ils croient.*

Past imp. *je croy-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je cr-us, &c., nous cr-ûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je croir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je croir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *croi-s, croy-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je croi-e, &c., que nous croy-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je cr-usse, &c., que nous cr-ussions, &c.*

Inf. croire.

Part. *croy-ant, -cru.*

CROÎTRE, to grow.

Ind. pres. imp. *je crois, tu crois, il croît, nous croissons, &c.*

Past imp. *je croiss-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je cr-ûs, &c., nous cr-ûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je croîtr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je croîtr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *croi-s, croiss-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je crois-se, &c., que nous croiss-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je crus-se, &c.*

Inf. croître.

Part. *croiss-ant, crû.*

DIRE, to say, to tell.

Ind. pres. imp. *je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent.*

Past imp. *je dis-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je dis, &c., nous dîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je dir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je dir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *dis, disons, dites.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je dise, &c., que nous disions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je disse, &c., que nous dissions, &c.*

Infîn. *dire.*

Part. *disant, dit.*

ÉCLORE, to be hatched, to open, to dawn.

(Conjugated with être.)

Only used in the following forms :

Ind. pres. imp. *il éclot, ils éclosent.*

Fut. imp. *il éclora, ils éclosent.*

Cond. pres. *il écloreait, ils éclosaient.*

Subj. pres. *qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent.*

Infîn. *éclore.*

Part. *éclosant, éclos.*

ÉCRIRE, to write.

Ind. pres. imp. *j'écri-s, -s, -t, nous écri-vons, -vez, -vent.*

Past imp. *j'écrivais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *j'écri-vis, &c., nous écrivîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *j'écri-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *j'écri-ais, &c.*

Imper. *écri-s, -vons, -vez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que j'écrive, &c., que nous écri-vions, &c.*

Past imp. *que j'écri-visse, &c.*

Infîn. *écrire.*

Part. *écriv-ant, écrit.*

Circonscrire, to circumscribe, décrire, to describe, inscrire,

to inscribe, *prescrire*, to prescribe, *proscrire*, to proscribe, *récrire*, to re-write, *souscrire*, to set one's name to a document, *transcrire*, to transcribe, follow *écrire*.

FAIRE, to make or do.

Ind. pres. imp. *je fais, -s, -t, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.*

Past imp. *je fais-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je fis, &c., nous fîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je fer-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je fer-ais, &c.*

Imper. *fais, faisons, faites.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je fasse, &c., que nous fassions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je fisse, &c., que nous fissions, &c.*

Inf. *faire.*

Part. *fais-ant, fait.*

With its compounds, *défaire*, to undo, &c.

FRIRE, to fry.

Chiefly used with *faire*.

Ind. pres. imp. *je fris, tu fris, il frit.* No plural.

Fut. imp. *je frir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je frir-ais, &c.*

Imp. *fris.*

Inf. *frire.*

Past part. *frit.*

LIRE, to read.

Ind. pres. imp. *je lis, -s, -t, nous lis-ons, &c.*

Past. imp. *je lis-ais, &c.*

Past def. perf. *je lus, &c., nous lûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je lir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je lir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *lis, lis-ons, lisez.*

Subj. pres, imp. *que je lise, &c.*

Past imp. *que je lusse, &c.*

Infinitive. *lire, lis-ant, lu.*

In the same way conjugate *élire*, to elect ; *relire*, to read again.

LUIRE, to shine.

Ind. pres. imp. *je lui-s, -s, -t, nous luis-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je luis-ais, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je luir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je luir-ais, &c.*

Imper. *lui-s, -sons, -sez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je luisse, &c.*

Infinitive. *lui-re.*

Part. *luis-ant, lui.*

METTRE, to put.

Ind. pres. imp. *je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mett-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je mett-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je mis, &c., nous mîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je mettr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je mettr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *mets, mett-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je mett-e, &c., que nous mett-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je misse, &c.*

Infinitive. *mettre.*

Part. *mett-ant, mis.*

With its compounds.

MOUDRE, to grind.

Ind. pres. imp. *je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moul-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je moul-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je moul-us, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je moudr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je moudr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *mouds, moul-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je moul-e, &c.*

Past imp. *que je moul-usse, &c.*

Infin. *moudre.*

Part. *moul-ant, moul-u.*

In the same way conjugate *émoudre*, to whet, *remoudre*, to grind again.

NAÎTRE, to be born.

(Conjugated with *être*.)

Ind. pres. imp. *je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je naissais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je naqu-is, &c., nous naquîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je naîtrai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je naîtrais, &c.*

Imper. *nais, naissons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je nais-se, &c.*

Past imp. *que je naqu-isse, &c.*

Infin. *naître.*

Part. *naissant, né.*

NUIRE, to injure.

Ind. pres. imp. *je nuis-s, -s, -t, nous nuis-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je nuisais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je nuis-is, &c., nous nuisîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je nuirai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je nuirais, &c.*

Imper. *nuis-s, nuis-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je nuise, &c.*

Past imp. *que je nuis-isse, &c.*

Infin. *nuire.*

Part. *nuisant, nuis.*

In the same way conjugate *conduire*, to conduct. Participle passed, *conduit*.

PAÎTRE, to graze.

This verb is conjugated like *connaître*, but has no past definite, imperfect subjunctive, nor past participle.

REPAÎTRE, to feed, to satiate.

Has the tenses wanting in *paître*.

PLAIRE, to please.

Ind. pres. imp. *je plais-s, plai-s, plai-t, nous plais-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je plais-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je plu-s, &c., nous plûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je plair-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je plair-ais, &c.*

Imper. *plais, plais-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je plais-e, &c.*

Past imp. *que je plusse, &c.*

Infin. *plai-re.*

Part. *plais-ant, plu.*

In the same way conjugate *taire*, to be silent, and all compounds of *plaire*, *se complaire à*, to take pleasure in.

PRENDRE, to take.

Ind. pres. imp. *je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous pren-ons, -ez, ils prennent.*

Past imp. *je pren-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je pris, &c., nous prîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je prend-rai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je prend-rais, &c.*

Imper. *prends, pren-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je prenne, &c., que nous prenions, -iez, prennent.*

Past imp. *que je prisse, &c.*

Infin. *prendre.*

Part. *pren-ant, pris.*

With its compounds, *apprendre*, to learn, &c.

RÉSoudre, to resolve.

Ind. pres. imp. *je résou-s, -s, -t, nous résolv ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je résolv-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je résol-us, &c., nous résol-ûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je résoudr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je résoudr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *résous, résolvons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je résolve, &c., que nous résol-vions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je résolusse, &c.*

Infin. *résoudre.*

Part. *résolv-ant, résolu* or *résous.*

The past participles of *absoudre*, to absolve, and of *dissoudre*, to dissolve, are *absous, dissous*. These verbs have no past definite perfect, and therefore no past imperfect subjunctive. When *résoudre* means resolved into, the participle is *résous*: ex. *un brouillard résous en pluie*, a fog melting into rain.

RIRE, to laugh.

Ind. pres. imp. *je ri-s, -s, -t, nous ri-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je ri-ais, &c., nous ri-ons, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je ris, &c., nous rîmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je rir-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je rir-ais, &c.*

Imp. *ris, ri-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je rie, &c., que nous riions, &c.*

Past imper. *que je risse, &c.*

Infin. *rire.*

Part. *ri-ant, ri.*

Sourire, to smile, *se rire de*, to laugh at, follow the same conjugation.

SUIVRE, to follow.

Ind. pres. imp. *je sui-s, -s, -t, nous suiv-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je suiv-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je suiv-is, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je suivr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je suivr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *suis, suiv-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je suiv-e, &c., que nous suiv-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je suiv-isse, &c.*

Infin. *sui-v-re.*

Part. sui-v-ant, sui-v-i.

Poursuivre, to pursue, follows *sui-v-re*. *S'ensuivre*, to follow from that, is only used in the third person singular, rarely in the third person plural.

TRAIRE, to milk.

Ind. pres. imp. *je trai-s, -s, -t, nous tray-ons, -ez, ils trai-ent.*

Past imper. *je tray-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. none.

Fut. imp. *je trair-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je trair-ais, &c.*

Imper. *trai-s, tray-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je traie, &c.*

Past imp. none.

Infin. *trai-re.*

Part. *tray-ant, trai-t.*

With its derivatives, *abstraire*, to abstract, &c. *Braire*, to bray, is only used in the third persons singular and plural of the present imperfect of the indicative, *se mettre à braire* supplying the other tenses.

VAINCRE, to conquer.

Ind. pres. imp. *je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc, nous vainq-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je vainqu-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je vainqu-is, &c., nous vainqu-îmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je vaincr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je vaincr-ais, &c.*

Imper. *vainc-s, vainqu-ons, -ez.*

Subj. pres. imp. *que je vainque, &c., que nous vainqu-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je vainqu-isse, &c., que nous vainqu-issions, &c.*

Inf. *vainc-re.*

Part. *vainqu-ant, vainc-u.*

VIVRE, to live.

Ind. pres. imp. *je vi s, -s, -t, nous viv-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Past imp. *je viv-ais, &c.*

Past def. imp. *je véc-us, &c., nous véc-ûmes, &c.*

Fut. imp. *je vivr-ai, &c.*

Cond. imp. *je vivr-ais, &c.*

Imper. vis, viv-ons, -ez.

Subj. pres. imp. *que je viv-e, &c., que nous riv-ions, &c.*

Past imp. *que je véc-usse, &c.*

Inf. *viv-re.*

Part. *viv-ant, véc-u.*

With its compounds.

78. Notes on the Fourth Conjugation.

In this conjugation are about thirty irregular verbs, of which one class make their past definite in *is*: ex. *je conduis*; and the other in *us*: ex. *je connus*, following the Latin verbs from which they are derived.

Accroire, to believe, is used in the infinitive only: ex. *faire accroire*, to make one believe what is not true; *en faire accroire à*, to impose upon; *s'en faire accroire* to have too high an opinion of oneself.

Dire and **faire** keep the Latin termination in the second person plural of the present imperfect and imperative, making *dites, faites*. The compounds of *faire* are all modelled on it; *redire*, to repeat, follows *dire*; *maudire*, to curse, makes *maudissez*, and doubles the *s* in the present imperfect, and all parts of the verb derived from it. The other compounds of *dire*, *médire de*, to slander, *prédire*, to predict, *contredire*, to contradict, make *discz* in the second person plural of the present imperfect.

Faire faire, or *faire* immediately preceding any infinitive, means to get, order, or cause: ex. *je me fais faire une robe*, I am getting a dress made; *il a fait faire une selle*, he has had a saddle made. This verb appears in numerous idioms: ex. *faire la chambre*, to c

122 EXERCISES ON FOURTH CONJUGATION.

the room ; *se faire à*, to get used to ; *ne faire que*, to do nothing but ; *ne faire que de*, to have but just : ex. *elle ne fait que d'arriver*, she is but just come.

In verbs like *connaître*, *croître*, *naître*, *paraître*, &c., in all tenses where *i* is followed by *t*, it takes a circumflex accent : ex. *connaît*, *croîtrai*, *naîtrai*, *paraîtrai*.

Se mettre à, means to set about something : ex. *je me suis mis à travailler*, I set to work.

S'y prendre means to set to work in a particular way : *je ne sais comment m'y prendre*, I do not know how to manage it ; *vous vous y prenez mal*, you are setting to work amiss. *S'en prendre à* means to lay the fault on some one : ex. *si cela ne réussit pas il ne faut pas s'en prendre à moi*, if that does not succeed the blame must not be laid on me.

Exercises on Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

I.

Le chien, the dog.

Une affaire, an affair.

Vite, quickly.

La conférence, the lecture.

Trop, too, too much.

Le discours, the speech.

I am drinking some water. Who is drinking ? My dog was drinking. Were you drinking too fast ? The horse will drink. Drink slowly. That he may not drink the water. He was concluding the lecture. Conclude the speech. We are conducting him. The dog was leading the blind man. That he may conduct the affair. He is acquainted with your friend. I used to know (*connaître*) Paris. He will know (be acquainted with) the question. I am sewing the dress. He is sewing the riding-habit. We sew slowly. I shall sew faster. The coat is not sewed. I believe that he fears to (*de*) go home. We are not afraid to speak. They are afraid to sing. The dog was afraid to drink. I am vexed that he fears to go away. We believe that he has resolved to come. I used to believe it. I believed it yesterday. I shall believe you. The rose-tree was not growing. It will grow fast. Growing slowly.

II.

Ce que, what, that which.

Dire quelque chose à quelqu'un, to say something to some one.

Je le lui dis, I told it him (to him).

Dites-le-moi, tell it me (to me).

Contredire, to contradict.

Étrange, strange.

I say that the affair is strange. Do they say that the eggs are hatched? You say that he is afraid to come. People say that you are afraid to go home. Who says that I am writing? I was saying that you would write soon. I told it you. I was writing last Thursday. Let us write directly. Tell it him. Tell me if you have said it. Repeat what you have said. You slander my friend. He said it to me. You say it, and you repeat it, and you contradict your teacher. People say that you make mistakes. I have heard it said. I am writing a letter. Let us write directly. I should say that we ought to know him. Tell me if he has written. I am doing it while writing.

III.

Une jupe, a skirt.

Des souliers, shoes.

Faites—parler, make—speak.

I am making a dress. We are making a riding-habit. You make shoes. The blind are making baskets. Who was making that speech? We were making coffee. She made it yesterday. We made a coat. I shall make two dresses. Shall I have a dress made? Boil the eggs. Make him good. Make the child speak. Where is the servant, that she may do the room. He has had a coat made. They have had some shoes made. You do nothing but dawdle. They do nothing but talk. I have done nothing but sew.

The book that he reads. The sermon that I read. They read a book. I have read all the book. After we had read we put the book on the table. I am putting the flowers in the basket. I should put (on) my new dress. Let us put (on) the riding-habit. Although I may put (on) the shoes.

He was grinding slowly. Grind the grain. It is ground. He was born at Paris. Is the child born? They are born.

IV.

He injured me. Injuring some one. To injure a friend. It pleases me to (*de*) paint. He pleased my friend. They do not please you. It has pleased Alfred. It had not pleased my cousin to appear. I am taking the dictionary. He takes it also. They take coffee. I took your stamps. Taking the tickets. I have taken them. I have resolved to take it. He laughs at (*de*) you. Who is laughing? Arthur has laughed at his cousin. Laughing at the speech. Are we following you? I followed slowly. He has followed the servant. Keep silent, they have followed us.

V.

La vache, the cow.
Toujours, always, still.

La chèvre, the goat.
Longtemps, long.

She is milking the goats. We milk our cows. Milking a goat. I have milked the cows and the goats. He conquers me, but we conquer too. Napoleon conquered at (à) Lodi. I shall conquer you. Conquer the obstacle. You have all conquered.

He still lives. I believe that he was living. He has lived long. They will live still. That he may live long.

VI.

The goats are drinking. Sew my skirt. Did you recognise me? He appeared tired. No one has constrained you. What do you prescribe? Will you have prescribed something? Your friend is elected. We have re-read his book. He was wearying of Paris.

PASSIVE VERBS.

79. The passive verb expresses an action suffered or endured by the subject from some one or something else :

Ex. *le garçon est puni par son maître*, the boy is punished by his master.

Passive verbs are conjugated by means of the verb *être*, through all its moods and tenses, followed by the past participle of the verb conjugated.

Example of a Passive Verb.

ÊTRE BLÂMÉ, to be blamed.

Indicative.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

I am blamed.

Je suis	}	blâm-é
Tu es		or
Il est		blâm-ée
Nous sommes	}	blâm-és
Vous êtes		or
Ils, elles, sont		blâm-ées

PRESENT PERFECT.

I have been blamed.

J'ai été	}	blâm-é
Tu as été		or
Il a été		blâm-ée
Nous avons été	}	blâm-és
Vous avez été		or
Ils, elles, ont été		blâm-ées

PAST IMPERFECT.

I was blamed.

J'étais	}	blâm-é
Tu étais		or
Il était	}	blâm-ée
Nous étions		blâm-és
Vous étiez	}	or
Ils étaient		blâm-ées

PAST DEFINITE IMPERFECT.

I was blamed.

Je fus	}	blâm-é
Tu fus		or
Il fut	}	blâm-ée
Nous fûmes		blâm-és
Vous fûtes	}	or
Ils furent		blâm-ées

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

I shall be blamed.

Je serai	}	blâm-é
Tu seras		or
Il sera	}	blâm-ée
Nous serons		blâm-és
Vous serez	}	or
Ils seront		blâm-ées

CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT.

I should be blamed.

Je serais	}	blâm-é
Tu serais		or
Il serait	}	blâm-ée
Nous serions		blâm-és
Vous seriez	}	or
Ils seraient		blâm-ées

PAST PERFECT.

I had been blamed.

J'avais été	}	blâm-é
Tu avais été		or
Il avait été	}	blâm-ée
Nous avions été		blâm-és
Vous aviez été	}	or
Ils avaient été		blâm-ées

PAST DEFINITE PERFECT.

I had been blamed.

J'eus été	}	blâm-é
Tu eus été		or
Il eut été	}	blâm-ée
Nous eûmes été		blâm-és
Vous eûtes été	}	or
Ils eurent été		blâm-ées

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been blamed.

J'aurai été	}	blâm-é
Tu auras été		or
Il aura été	}	blâm-ée
Nous aurons été		blâm-és
Vous aurez été	}	or
Ils auront été		blâm-ées

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

I should have been blamed.

J'aurais été	}	blâm-é
Tu aurais été		or
Il aurait été	}	blâm-ée
Nous aurions été		blâm-és
Vous auriez été	}	or
Ils auraient été		blâm-ées

Imperative.

Be [thou] blamed.

Sois blâm-é or blâm-ée

Soyons } blâm-és or blâm-ées
Soyez }

Subjunctive.

PRESENT IMPERFECT.

That I may be blamed.

Que je sois	}	blâm-é
Que tu sois		or
Qu'il soit	}	blâm-ée
Que nous soyons		blâm-és
Que vous soyez	}	or
Qu'ils soient		blâm-ées

PAST IMPERFECT.

That I might be blamed.

Que je fusse	}	blâm-é
Que tu fusses		or
Qu'il fût	}	blâm-ée
Que nous fussions		blâm-és
Que vous fussiez	}	or
Qu'ils fussent		blâm-ées

PRESENT PERFECT.

That I may have been blamed.

Que j'aie été	}	blâm-é
Que tu aies été		or
Qu'il ait été	}	blâm-ée
Que nous ayons été		blâm-és
Que vous ayez été	}	or
Qu'ils aient été		blâm-ées

PAST PERFECT.

That I might have been blamed.

Que j'eusse été	}	blâm-é
Que tu eusses été		or
Qu'il eût été	}	blâm-ée
Que nous eussions été		blâm-és
Que vous eussiez été	}	or
Qu'ils eussent été		blâm-ées

Infinitive.

PRESENT.

To be blamed.

Être blâm-é or blâm-ée
— és — ées

PERFECT.

To have been blamed.

Avoir été blâm-é or blâm-ée
— és — ées

Participles.

PRESENT.

Being blamed.

Étant blâm-é or blâm-ée
— ée — ées

PAST.

[Blamed.]

Blâm-é or blâm-ée
— és — ées

PERFECT.

Having been blamed.

Ayant été blâm-é or blâm-ée
— és — ées

80. All active verbs can be turned into passives : ex. *j'invite* is active, but *je suis invité* is passive.

Passive verbs are much less used in French than in English. The active verb is used instead, with an indefinite pronoun as the subject, when the sense will allow of it ; ex. tulips are much cultivated in Holland, *on cultive beaucoup les tulipes en Hollande*. Or else a reflexive verb is used. *Corneille se distingue par la mâle simplicité de son style*, Corneille is distinguished by the manly simplicity of his style. *À combien les citrons se vendent-ils dans ce pays?* at how much are lemons sold in this part of the world? literally, do lemons sell themselves? It would also be correct to say, *à combien vend-on les citrons?* at how much do they sell lemons?

Sometimes, however, the sense would be altered by using the reflexive pronoun, as *il s'invite*, he gives himself an invitation, which is obviously very different from *on l'invite* or *il est invité*, he is invited by some one else. In such cases this reflexive form cannot be used for the passive.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

81. IMPERSONAL verbs are used in the third person only, as *il y a*, there is, there are ; *il y avait*, there was, there were, &c. ; *il tonne*, it thunders, &c. *Il* here stands for *cela*, and has only an indeterminate sense.

Active and neuter verbs can be used impersonally :

Ex. *il fait chaud*, it is hot ; *il faut obéir*, we must obey.

Example of an Impersonal Verb.

PLEUVOIR, to rain.

Indicative.

Pres. imp. *il pleut*, it rains.

Pres. perf. *il a plu*, it has rained.

Pres. imp. *il pleuvait*, it was raining.

Past imp. *il avait plu*, it had rained.

Past def. imp. *il plut*, it rained.

Past def. perf. *il eut plu*, it had rained.

Fut. imp. *il pleuvra*, it will rain.

Fut. perf. *il aura plu*, it will have rained.

Cond. imp. *il pleuvrait*, it would rain.

Cond. perf. *il aurait plu*, it would have rained.

Subj. pres. imp. *qu'il pleuve*, that it may rain.

Pres. perf. *qu'il ait plu*, that it may have rained.

Past imp. *qu'il plût*, that it might rain.

Past perf. *qu'il eût plu*, that it might have rained.

Infin. *pleuvoir*, to rain.

Part. pres. *pleuvant*.

Part. past, *plu*.

Part. perf. *ayant plu*.

If employed figuratively it is conjugated with *être*, ex.
il nous est plu hier des fâcheux, troublesome people showered down on us yesterday.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

82. By **Defective Verbs** is meant verbs which want some mood, tense, or person of the verb, as *échoir*, *seoir*, the conjugation of which has already been given.

NEUTER VERBS WITH ÊTRE.

83. THERE are only twelve neuter verbs conjugated with *être*. These are : *aller*, to go ; *arriver*, to arrive ; *décéder*, to die ; *échoir*, to fall due ; *éclore*, to be hatched ; *entrer*, to enter ; *mourir*, to die ; *naître*, to be born ; *partir*, to go away ; *sortir*, to go out ; *tomber*, to fall ; *venir*, to come ; and its compounds, *devenir*, to become ; *intervenir*, to interfere ; *parvenir*, to succeed ; *revenir*, to return ; *survenir*, to arrive unexpectedly. The compound tenses of these verbs run thus : *je suis arrivé*, *j'étais arrivé*, *je fus arrivé*, *je serai arrivé*, *je serais arrivé*, *que je sois arrivé*, *que je fusse arrivé*, *être arrivé*, *étant arrivé*.

INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH ÊTRE AND AVOIR.

84. Most of these take *avoir*, but the following take *être* : *entrer*, to enter; *monter*, to go up; *partir*, to set out; *repartir*, to set out again; *retourner*, to return; *sortir*, to go out; *tomber*, to fall; *venir*, to come; *devenir*, to become; *parvenir*, to succeed.

When **convenir** means to suit, it takes *avoir*; when to agree, *être*.

When **monter** and **sortir** are active verbs they take *avoir* :

As *j'ai monté la colline*, I have gone up the hill.

J'ai sorti ces liasses de papiers de l'armoire, I have brought these packets of papers out of the cupboard.

PARTICIPLE.

85. The **Participle** is so called from its participating or sharing in the nature of both the verb and adjective; of the verb because it marks a tense, and of an adjective because it can qualify a noun :

Ex. *balayant la chambre*, sweeping the bedroom.

Un poëme mal répété, a poem ill repeated.

There are two sorts of participle, the present and the past.

The *present participle* ends in *ant* in each conjugation. It is invariable when it expresses an action :

Ex. *des agneaux bondissant dans les champs*, lambs bounding in the fields ;

but follows the rule for adjectives when it qualifies a noun :

Ex. *des gens fatigants*, tiresome people.

Des agneaux bondissants, bounding lambs.

Une mère aimée, a beloved mother.

Verbal adjectives stand *after* nouns :

Ex. *une ressemblance frappante*, a striking likeness.

Un homme aimant, a loving man.

ADVERB.

86. ADVERBS, as the name implies, are words added to verbs to modify them, and show when, where, or how an action takes place :

Ex. *il est venu ici*, he came here.

Jean lit mal, John reads badly.

Adverbs are invariable. English ones very often end in *ly*, as German ones do in *lich*; both these endings mean *like*. French ones frequently terminate in *ment*, from the Latin *mente*; ex. *fortement*, *fortimente*, strongly, or literally translated, 'with or by a strong mind.'

Adverbs are usually formed from feminine adjectives, as *heureusement*, happily; *franchement*, frankly; but those made from adjectives ending in *ant*, *ent*, change *nt* into *m*; ex. *prudent*, *prudemment*; except *lentement*, slowly, and *présentement*, now, forthwith.

Adjectives ending in *é*, *i*, or *u*, form the adverb from the masculine, as *aisément*, easily; *joliment*, prettily. *Impuni*, unpunished, however, makes *impunément*.

Exprès, on purpose; *gentil* (a word very difficult to translate, meaning sometimes 'prettily mannered,' sometimes nice, attractive'), make *expressément*, *gentiment*.

Confus, confused; *obscur*, obscure; and some others, change the *e* mute of the feminine into *é*; ex. *importunément*, importunately. *Aveugle*, blind; *commode*, convenient; *énorme*, enormous, also change the mute *e* into *é*; ex. *énormément*.

Eperdu, desperate; *ingénu*, ingenuous; *dû*, due; *assidu*, assiduous, make *éperdument*, *ingénument*, *dûment*, *assidûment*.

87. French, like English, has a few adverbs which are irregularly compared, as **bien**, well; **mieux**, better; **le mieux**, the best; **mal**, badly; **pis**, **le pis**; **peu**, little; **moins**, **le moins**.

Again, in both languages, there are some adjectives which do duty as adverbs, as **parler haut**, to speak out, or loudly; **parler hautement** is also used, but it means to speak energetically, with a determination to be listened to.

Adverbs of quantity, such as *beaucoup*, much; *trop*, too much; *assez*, enough, &c., are followed by *de* before a noun:

Ex. *combien d'élèves avez-vous?* how many pupils have you?

Very much must never be rendered by *très beaucoup*, but by *infiniment*, or simply *beaucoup*.

The chief **adverbs of negation** are *non*, *ne*, *pas*, *personne*, *rien*, *point*.

Pas and **point** both mean *not*, but the latter is the stronger word, coming from the Latin *punctum*, point or dot, while **pas** is derived from *passus*, a step.

PREPOSITION.

88. From the want of inflections to express cases in French, prepositions are largely used to mark those dependent relations of the noun which otherwise would be shown by a change in the termination. When the verb does not take a direct object, the noun is linked to it by a preposition, as *aimez-vous à monter à cheval?* (do you like riding?) or prepositions join one verb to another, or show the relation in which two words stand to each other:

Ex. *c'est l'échiquier d'Adrien*, it is Adrian's chess-board.

The word *Preposition* comes from *præ*, before, and *positionem*, position, and denotes that this class of words must stand immediately before the word to which they belong, a rule strictly enforced in French.

By *Simple Prepositions* are meant those consisting of one word, as *à*, to (which takes a grave accent to distinguish it from the third person singular of *avoir*, *a*, has); *contre*, against; *vers*, towards. These come from the Latin prepositions *ad*, *contra*, *versus*, and a knowledge of Latin greatly helps in deciding what prepositions follow verbs in French.

Many French prepositions are a compound of two Latin words, as *avec*, with, compounded of *apud hoc*; *selon*, according to, compounded of *sub longum*. Others come from Latin nouns, as *chez*, at the house of, from *in casa*; *malgré*, in spite of, from *malum gratum*, ill-will.

Durant, during; *pendant*, while, pending; *suivant*, following; *touchant*, concerning, were originally participles, which in old French stood before their noun in constructions answering to the Latin ablative absolute. Later they became confused with prepositions.

89. There are a few prepositions compounded of the article followed by a noun, pronoun, or article; ex. *auprès*, near; *à travers*, across; *au milieu*, in the middle.

Voici, *voilà*, are formed from *voi*, the old imperative of *voir*, to see, and the adverbs *ci* and *là*, here, there. *Voilà votre bêche*, therefore, means 'See there your spade.'

Attendu, considering; *excepté*, except; *passé*, past; *vu*, seen, are considered to be prepositions, and are therefore invariable, when they precede a noun or pronoun:

Ex. *tout le monde excepté l'équipage et moi*, every one except the crew and myself.

Passé l'heure fixée, the fixed hour being past.

But *l'heure fixée passée*, for here *passée* follows its noun and becomes a past participle.

Autour de, round; *à l'abri de*, under shelter of; *en raison de*, in proportion to, and others, are compound prepositions or prepositive locutions. The greater number govern a genitive and are followed by *de*; but *attendant*, joining; *jusque*, until; *quant*, as to; *par rapport*, govern *à*.

The following simple prepositions govern *de*: *auprès*, near; *autour*, round; *hors*, except; *loin*, far.

When the sense requires it *de* is combined with the article:

Ex. *près du perron*, near the flight of steps.

Auprès de la reine, with the queen.

90. Prepositions should usually be repeated (especially those of one syllable) before every noun:

As *elle en jouit sans peine et sans inquiétude*, she enjoys it without pain or anxiety

Le bâtiment a fait voile pour Cadix et pour Lisbonne, the vessel has sailed for Cadiz and Lisbon.

When a verb is governed by a preposition the infinitive is used when in English the present participle is required:

Ex. *elle ne doit pas s'en aller sans m'avertir*, she ought not to go away without telling me.

The only exception to this rule is when *en* is used:

Ex. *elles suivirent le vainqueur en pleurant et en suppliant*, they followed the conqueror weeping and supplicating.

En here means *with*; it can also express *by*:

Ex. *on apprend en étudiant*, one learns by studying.

If it means *like*, the participle governed by it is variable:

Ex. *elles sont venues en mendiantes*, that is, like beggars. The participle here takes the sense of a noun.

Chez means at my, thy, his house, &c., or at home.

Est-il chez lui? is he at home?

Je viens de chez vous, I come from your house.

Allez chez le libraire, go to the bookseller's.

Chez governs the disjunctive pronouns.

CONJUNCTION.

91. As its name implies, the Conjunction serves to connect words and sentences:

Ex. *César et Pompée*, Cæsar and Pompey.

Il n'alla ni au Harre ni à Dieppe, he went neither to Havre nor to Dieppe.

The chief conjunctions are *ainsi*, thus ; *car*, for ; *comme*, as ; *donc*, then ; *enfin*, at last ; *et*, and ; *lorsque*, when ; *mais*, but ; *ou*, or ; *quand*, when ; *que*, that ; *quoique*, although ; *si*, if ; *sinon*, if not.

Que is a conjunction when it unites two clauses, as *j'espère qu'il viendra*, I hope that he will come.

Que followed by *de* takes the next verb in the infinitive, as *j'irai plutôt que de le fâcher*, I will go rather than vex him.

If *si* stands for *tant*, so much, or *tellement*, so, thus, it is an adverb :

Ex. *je ne l'ai jamais vue si triste*, I never saw her so sad.

By a *Conjunctive Locution* is meant two or more words acting as a conjunction, such as *à moins que*, unless ; *tandis que*, while ; *par conséquent*, consequently.

INTERJECTION.

92. THE *Interjection* is a word by which we express some sudden emotion, as *chut* ! hush ! *vraiment* ! really !

Interjections are formed either from nouns, as *ciel* ! heavens ! or verbs, as *soit*, so be it, or else they are mere sounds, as *ah* ! *et* !

Hélas, *alas*, was formerly written in two words, *hé* ! *las* ! the first being a true interjection, and *las*, unhappy, a word which has changed its meaning and now means tired.

Dame, used as an interjection alone, with a shade of deprecation, or in a sentence, as *oh, dame, non* ! oh dear, no ! comes from the Latin *Domine Deus*, O Lord God. It is found in old French, as *dame Dieu*, and lastly became *dame*.

SYNTAX.

93. THE word **Syntax** comes from the Greek, and means 'arrangement.' Syntax shows how to arrange words in grammatical sentences. **Etymology** deals with single words.

The etymological forms in French are more complicated than in English, and therefore the syntax has more rules. In English, for instance, the three persons plural of a verb are alike; ex. We *think*, you *think*, they *think*; but in French each has its own ending. It is the same with adjectives and articles, which in English have no feminine or plural, but have both in French.

In Etymology we **decline** and **conjugate**, in Syntax we **parse**. *Etymological parsing* tells us of what parts of speech a sentence is composed, what numbers, persons, &c. are used. *Logical parsing* analyses sentences, pointing out which is the *subject* and which the *predicate*, &c.

94. When we put a thought into words we make a Proposition; ex. *le mérite est modeste*. Here we assert that modesty is a quality belonging to merit.

Every sentence contains one or more propositions. A proposition, considered grammatically, has as many parts as words.

The **Proposition** may consist of only one proposition, as *le mérite est modeste*; it is then called a *Simple Proposition*; or it may contain two; as *notre maître, qui est juste, est toujours obéi*, our master; who is just, is always obeyed. This is a *Compound Proposition*; the principal one is *notre maître est obéi*; the secondary, *qui est juste*.

Every proposition must contain three terms, **Subject**, **Verb**, and **Attribute**. If we say *The sun shines*, or *is shining*, we attribute the quality of shining to the sun, which is the subject of the verb *is*.

To be is always understood or expressed in a sentence;
 ex. I loved him, or, I was loving him at such a time.

Common sense, which indeed is the best guide in syntax, tells us that the verb must always agree with the subject. In French the adjective must do so too.

95. Words used to fill out, or complete an idea, are called the **Complement**. If we say *le père est ici*, it only tells us that some one's father is here; but if we say *le père de Charles est ici*, the words *de Charles* complete the idea, and show whose father is meant.

In such a sentence as *je lui donne cet argent pour sa mère*, I give (or, am giving) this money to him for his mother, there are three complements. I give, subject, verb, and attribute. Give what? This money. To whom? To him. Why? For his mother. These are called the *logical* complements, and must not be confounded with grammatical ones, which are noticed elsewhere.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

96. WHEN a noun is used to complete the sense of another, or to describe its use, they are usually connected by *à*, or *de*; ex. *un moulin à vent*, a windmill; *terre à blé*, corn-land; *un lit de plume*, a feather bed.

Prepositions began to replace the genitive inflexion in later Latin—we find even in Virgil *templum de marmore*, a marble temple—and early became the mark of case in French; whence declensions and inflexion disappeared, until at last only two distinct forms remained to nouns, one for the singular, and one for the plural; this latter being formed by *s*, *x*, or *z*; as *les enfants*, *les voix*, *les nez*.

It is impossible to give an exact rule as to when *à* is used with a qualifying noun, or when *au*, *à la*, *aux*, is required. Usually there is a shade of difference in the meaning, but sometimes custom alone decides.

The following simple prepositions govern *de*: *auprès*, near; *autour*, round; *hors*, except; *loin*, far.

When the sense requires it *de* is combined with the article:

Ex. près du perron, near the flight of steps.

Auprès de la reine, with the queen.

90. Prepositions should usually be repeated (especially those of one syllable) before every noun:

As elle en jouit sans peine et sans inquiétude, she enjoys it without pain or anxiety

Le bâtiment a fait voile pour Cadix et pour Lisbonne, the vessel has sailed for Cadiz and Lisbon.

When a verb is governed by a preposition the infinitive is used when in English the present participle is required:

Ex. elle ne doit pas s'en aller sans m'avertir, she ought not to go away without telling me.

The only exception to this rule is when *en* is used:

Ex. elles suivirent le vainqueur en pleurant et en suppliant, they followed the conqueror weeping and supplicating.

En here means *with*; it can also express *by*:

Ex. on apprend en étudiant, one learns by studying.

If it means *like*, the participle governed by it is variable:

Ex. elles sont venues en mendiantes, that is, like beggars. The participle here takes the sense of a noun.

Chez means at my, thy, his house, &c., or at home.

Est-il chez lui? is he at home?

Je viens de chez vous, I come from your house.

Allez chez le libraire, go to the bookseller's.

Chez governs the disjunctive pronouns.

CONJUNCTION.

91. As its name implies, the Conjunction serves to connect words and sentences:

Ex. César et Pompée, Cæsar and Pompey.

The exceptions are :—

a. Names of persons and places, *Antoine, Paris*, but it is required before a title, as *le colonel Vauban*. Such sentences as *Louis, roi de France*, *Louis, King of France*; *Godefroi, duc de Bouillon*, *Godfrey, Duke of Bouillon*, seem at first sight to contradict this rule; but here we have two nouns in apposition, in which case the second takes no article.

b. Nouns used adjectively, as *une robe de soie*, a silk dress. Here the noun *soie* is used as a qualifying adjective to describe the kind of dress. *Je suis curé*, I am a parish priest. *Curé* describes the kind of ecclesiastic meant. We find nearly the same construction in English in such a phrase as *he is clerk to my brother*.

c. In proverbs :

Ex. *pauvreté n'est pas vice*, poverty is not a crime.

d. Before words implying residence, as *rue*, street; *place*, square :

Ex. *nous demeurons rue Royale*, we live in the Rue Royale.

e. Before cardinal numeral adjectives applied to princes, popes, &c. *Louis Seize*, Louis the Sixteenth; *Charles Cinq*, Charles the Fifth.

f. In the title of a book :

Ex. *Histoire de Venise*, History of Venice.

g. After the pronoun *quel* used as an exclamation :

Ex. *quel ennui!* what a bore!

h. With *avec*, with; *comme*, as; *pour*, for, &c., where the noun is indeterminate :

Ex. *je suis sans espoir*, I am without hope.

Je suis sans l'espoir de, would mean, I am without the hope, i.e. some particular hope expressed by the complement of the sentence.

Although names of places rarely take the article, countries, provinces, islands, rivers, and mountains do :

Ex. *le Languedoc, le Rhône, les Alpes*.

When going to or from a country is spoken of, and that country is feminine, we use *en* and *de* instead of the article :

Ex. *je vais en France*, I am going to France.

Je viens d'Ecosse, I am come from Scotland.

If the country be masculine, *au* and *du* are employed :

Ex. *je vais au Japon*, I am going to Japan ; *je reviens du Canada*, I am returning from Canada.

Portugal, Denmark, and Béarn are exceptions, for though they are masculine we must say *en Portugal*, &c.

If the name of a person or place has an adjective before it, the article is used just as in English.

Ex. *le méchant Édouard et le bon George*, the naughty Edward and the good George.

But, *bonne mère, méchant Édouard*, good mother, naughty Edward, for here the article would be superfluous in either language.

100. The Definite Article is used before nouns of weight, measure, and number.

As *des plumes à trois francs le cent*, pens at three francs a hundred.

Des poulets à quatre francs la pièce, chickens at four francs a piece.

It will be observed that when a noun is taken in a general or a partitive sense, as above, *des* is used, if it be plural, *du* or *de la* should it be singular : *du beurre*, butter ; *de la crème*, cream.

Should the noun be preceded by an adjective, *de* is required.

Ex. *de bonnes plumes*, good pens ; *d'excellente crème*, excellent cream.

The only exception to this rule is when the adjective has in fact become one with its noun.

Ex. *des petits-pois*, green pease.

If the adjective follow its noun the partitive article is used.

Ex. *du papier mince*, thin paper.

Some, any, before a noun are represented by du, de la, des.

Ex. coupez du pain, cut some bread.

J'ai des élèves, I have some pupils.

If the sentence were negative, *de* would be used, as *je n'ai pas d'élèves*, I have not any pupils ; for a common noun takes no article when it is the direct object of an active verb used negatively.

Ex. je ne vous ferai pas de reproches, literally, I will not make you reproaches.

But there is an exception to this rule : should the noun be followed by an adjective or a proposition which determines it, the *partitive article* is required.

Ex. je ne vous ferai pas des reproches inutiles, I will not make you useless reproaches.

After *bien*, meaning *many*, and *la plupart*, *most*, *du, de la, des*, not *de*, must be used.

Ex. bien des enfants, many children.

The omission of the article often changes the sense of a phrase ; *ex. toute la maison est occupée*, the whole house is occupied ; *toute maison est occupée*, every house is occupied ; *entendre la raillerie*, to know how to joke ; *entendre raillerie*, to take a joke readily.

To some degree the English construction helps us to know when there are exceptions to the above rules. For instance, neither in English nor French do proper names usually require an article, but it is used in both languages in such a case as *The great Coligny*, *le grand Coligny* ; *the Corneilles* and *the Racines* of our century, *les Corneilles et les Racines de notre siècle*. Again, in an enumeration neither article nor personal pronoun is used in English, and it is equally omitted in French ; *ex. tantes, sœurs, cousines, toutes s'y trouvèrent*, aunts, sisters, cousins, all were there.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

101. ALL adjectives agree with the noun which they qualify in gender, number, and case.

Ex. *la colline est escarpée*, the hill is steep.

Ces hommes sont fatigués, these men are tired.

An adjective relating to two or more nouns in the singular is put in the plural.

Ex. *un lion et un ours énormes*, an enormous lion and bear.

If several nouns follow an adjective, it must be repeated before each.

Ex. *les grandes pensées et les grandes actions*, great thoughts and great actions, not *les grandes pensées et actions*.

When the adjective follows several nouns which are synonymous, i.e. convey the same idea, it usually agrees with the last.

Ex. *sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation continuelle*, his life has been nothing but labour and continual occupation.

But many good authors always make the adjective masculine if a masculine noun has occurred in the sentence. Buffon writes, '*Dans la Laponie, la ronce, le genêt et la mousse font seuls la verdure de l'été*,' in Lapland the bramble, juniper, and moss form the only verdure of summer. If possible it is better to put the masculine adjective last, so as to connect it with the noun.

Ex. *une robe et un voile blancs*, a white dress and veil.

102. In English two synonymous adjectives are often united by the conjunction *and*, but this is to be avoided in French, as *et* expresses an additional idea, while in sentences such as, *sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation continuelle*, the same idea is presented by both words, with merely a different shade of meaning; ex. *il court avec une légèreté, une vitesse incroyables*, he runs with incredible lightness and swiftness.

When the adjective is preceded by two nouns, jo-

by *comme*, *de même que*, *ainsi que*, &c., it agrees with the first.

Ex. *le frère, comme la sœur, est très bon* (the brother is good, as the sister is), the second noun being qualified by *est bonne* understood, though not expressed.

After two nouns, separated by the conjunction *ou*, the adjective agrees with the latter only, unless the sense shows that it ought to agree with both.

Ex. *je veux des prunes ou une poire mûre*, I will have some plums or a ripe pear.

Il lui faut une force ou un courage peu communs, he will need unusual strength or courage. Here *peu communs* agrees with both nouns.

When several nouns express a gradation, and the last one sums up the rest, or is the strongest, it is with this that the adjective should agree.

Ex. *mais le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête*, but the sword, the bandage, the flame is all ready.

103. In compound adjectives, both parts agree if both qualify the noun.

Ex. *une perdrix grise-blanche*, a light grey partridge.

Des roses fraîches-cueillies, fresh-gathered roses.

The first part does not agree when used adverbially to modify the second.

Ex. *une fille nouveau-née*, a newly-born girl.

This does not, however, hold good in *nouvelle-mariée*, a newly-married wife.

When two adjectives are used to express a single colour, as *vert-foncé*, dark-green, neither is inflected.

Ex. *des feuilles vert-foncé*, dark-green leaves.

104. Adjectives of colour are uninflected if derived from nouns, as, *des gants paille*, straw-coloured gloves; *des habits marron*, brown coats. *Rose*, pink; *amarante*, amaranthine; and *garance*, madder, are exceptions.

Ex. *des rubans roses*, pink ribbons.

Demi and **nu** are invariable when they precede a noun, and agree when they follow; ex. *une demi-heure*, half-an-hour; *une heure et demie*, an hour and a half; *nu-pieds*, barefoot; *tête nue*, bareheaded.

When *demi* is used as a noun and means *half* in arithmetic, it is masculine.

Ex. *deux demis font un entier*, two halves make a whole.

Applied to hours, however, it is a feminine noun.

Ex. *cette horloge sonne-t-elle les demies*? does this clock strike the half hours?

Feu does not alter when placed before the article or a possessive adjective, as *feu l'impératrice*, the late empress; but it may agree if it follow, as *les feus princesses*, the late princesses.

Excepté, passé, supposé, y compris, vu, are invariable when they precede a noun, and variable when they follow it.

Ex. *passé cette date ce sera trop tard*, after that date it will be too late. But, *cette date passée*.

Ci-joint, ci-inclus, are invariable, (a) at the beginning of a sentence.

Ex. *ci-joint la copie de la lettre*, annexed is the copy of the letter.

(b) When embodied in a sentence, immediately before a noun.

Ex. *on trouvera ci-inclus copie du traité*, enclosed will be found a copy of the contract.

When they follow their noun they are inflected.

J'*en*voie les *contrats ci-joints*, I send the annexed contracts.

Franked, franc de port, pre-paid, is invariable before its noun, variable after it.

Ex. *je vous envoie, frano de port, une bourriche*, I send you a basket of game, carriage paid.

Cette bourriche est franche de port, this basket of game is carriage paid.

105. Certain idioms should be noticed, formed by means of the adjectives *beau*, *belle*, and *bonne* :

Ex. *on a beau dire*, *on a beau faire*, they speak in vain, they try in vain.

Avoir la partie belle, to have every chance of success.

Je l'ai échappé belle, I have had a narrow escape.

Vous nous la donnez bonne, you give us every chance.

In each case a masculine or feminine noun is understood. *Donner* or *échapper belle* implies *manière*, manner; *beau dire* probably means *on a un beau sujet de dire*, said ironically.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

106. The position of adjectives is very much a matter of taste and ear; as a rule, they *follow* their nouns, but there is an increasing inclination among modern French writers to place them as in English *before* nouns. Some, however, always follow the noun which they qualify, such as adjectives of nationality, religion, colour, shape, and taste; *une robe blanche*, a white dress; *une table ronde*, a round table; *un citron amer*, a bitter lemon; *un auteur anglais*, an English author. Some always precede it; ex. *digne*, worthy; *joli*, pretty; *petit*, small; *saint*, holy; *tel*, such; *tout*, all; *vieux*, old; *vilain*, ugly, &c. Those which are really nouns, but used adjectively, always follow; as *un homme trompeur*, a deceiving man.

It should be observed that certain adjectives have an entirely different meaning according to whether they follow or precede their noun; *un jeune homme*, a young man; *un homme jeune*, one not over a certain age. *Un grand homme* is a great man, but *un homme grand* a tall one. *Un brave homme*, a good man; *un homme brave*, a brave one. *Une sage-femme*, a midwife; *une femme sage*, a discreet woman.

107. An adjective preceded by *il est* requires the pre-

position *de* after it, as, *il est facile de dire cela*, it is easy to say that.

When an adjective is used adverbially, it is invariable :

Ex. *ces fleurs ne sentent pas bon*, these flowers do not smell nice.

Adjectives expressing dimension may be used in several ways :

Ex. this bell-tower is eighty feet high, *ce clocher a quatre-vingt pieds de hauteur*, or *de haut*.

Ce mur a dix pieds de haut (or, *de hauteur*) *sur vingt de long* (*de longueur*).

Observe that to express length or breadth *by* is rendered by *sur*.

More or less after a number are translated by *de plus que*, *de moins que*.

Ex. *vous avez trois ans de moins que ma sœur*, you are three years younger than my sister.

Il a huit ans de plus que sa femme, he is eight years older than his wife.

COMPLEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.

108. Two adjectives can have the same complement if both take the same preposition :

Ex. *ce vieux domestique est utile et précieux à son maître*, this old servant is useful and very dear to his master. *Utile* and *précieux* both govern *à*, but we cannot say, *ce vieux domestique est utile et aimé de son maître*, this old servant is useful and loved by his master, as this construction would be ungrammatical both in English and French, for *utile* governs *à*, and *aimé*, *de*, just as useful requires *to*, and loved, *by*. Nor can we suspend the sense by using two prepositions, as we might in English, thus : this servant is useful *to*, and cherished by his master, but the whole sentence must be turned, *ce domestique est utile à son maître, et en est aimé* . . .

SYNTAX OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

109. If in English an adjective qualifies different persons or things represented by the same noun, as '*our lucky and unlucky days*,' one possessive adjective serves for both, but in French it must be repeated before each, as, *mes nouveaux et mes vieux livres*, my new and old books.

If the adjective refer to the same person or thing, this repetition is unnecessary.

Ex. *mes chers et bons amis*, my dear, good friends.

The way in which possessive adjectives are used before nouns of relationship should be observed.

Ex. *bonjour, ma mère*, good day, mother.

Me voici, mon père, here I am, father.

These nouns may, however, as in English, be used without any such prefix.

110. The possessive adjective is replaced by the definite article before **parts of the body**, when there is no doubt to whom they belong, the possessor having been indicated by the sense of the sentence :

Ex. *fermez les yeux*, shut your eyes.

Il lui tâte le pouls, he feels his pulse.

J'ai mal aux dents, I have a toothache.

If, however, some *habitual* malady is spoken of, the possessive adjective must be used :

Ex. *j'ai mon mal aux dents*, that is, the toothache which constantly besets me.

Elle a sa migraine, she has her usual nervous headache.

When something possessed belongs to a *thing* the possessive adjective is replaced by *en*, followed by the definite article :

Ex. *j'ai visité Rome, j'en connais les palais*, I have visited Rome, I know *its* palaces.

But in speaking of a person, the possessive adjectives must be used :

Ex. *cette dame est mon amie, je connais ses qualités*, this lady is my friend, I know her merits.

SYNTAX OF INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

111. *Tout* is an adjective when it means *all* or *every*; it therefore follows the same rules as other adjectives, agreeing with the noun which it qualifies. When preceding names of towns it is always masculine, agreeing with *peuple* understood, as, *tout Rome sortit*, all Rome, that is, all the people in Rome, went forth. *Peuple* is a collective masculine noun.

When used adverbially to mean *entirely*, *quite*, or *however*, it is invariable before a masculine adjective or participle, and a feminine also, *if it begins with a vowel*:

Ex. *des habits tout usés*, clothes quite worn out.

Ils sont tout mouillés, they are quite wet through. *Tous mouillés* would mean *every one* wet through.

Elles sont tout étonnées, they are quite surprised, or, all astonishment.

For the sake of euphony, always so carefully observed in French, when a feminine adjective or participle begins with a consonant or an aspirated *h*, *tout* takes the gender and number of the adjective or the participle:

Ex. *elles sont toutes seules*, they are all alone.

Toutes hautaines qu'elles soient, however haughty they may be.

In such a phrase as *elle est tout autre*, it means she is quite changed, or quite different to, and with this adverbial meaning *tout* remains invariable. In *toute autre histoire*, *every other* history but this is meant, and then *tout*, being an adjective, agrees with the noun. As a noun *tout* means a whole, and the *t* is dropped in the plural:

Ex. *les mots sont des tous syllabiques*, words are syllabic wholes.

In compound tenses *tout* precedes the participle:

Ex. *j'ai tout entendu*, I have heard all.

Although *tout* often means *all*, in the sense of the whole, it cannot take an article. The whole school, for instance, must be rendered by *tout le pensionnat*.

Tout enters into many idioms, as *tout le monde*, everybody; *tous les mois*, every month; *toutes les semaines*, every week

112. **Quelque**, used adverbially, is invariable :

Ex. *il y a quelque cent lignes*, there are about a hundred lines.

Quelque méchants que vous soyez, however naughty you may be.

Quelque, meaning *however*, governs the subjunctive ; *quel que* does the same, and means *whatever* :

Ex. *quels que soient vos ennuis*, whatever your worries may be.

Unlike *quelque* it agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies.

Même is variable when an adjective :

Ex. *les mêmes thèmes*, the same exercises ;

and invariable when used as an adverb :

Ex. *les enfants même furent égorgés*, even the children were massacred.

Chaque must not be confounded with *chacun*, each one ; it must always be followed by a noun :

Ex. *chaque ouvrier*, each workman.

Dix livres chacun, ten pounds each.

SYNTAX OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

113. **AFTER** such expressions as *aussi*, accordingly ; *à peine*, scarcely ; *peut-être*, perhaps, the pronoun may be placed after the verb :

Ex. *peut-être dois-je m'en aller*, perhaps I ought to go away.

The pronoun is left out when the subjunctive is used without a conjunction to express some strong feeling, as *dussé-je périr !* were I to perish ! *Puisse le monde s'écrouler !* may the world perish !

When **en**, **y**, follow the imperative, *moi* becomes *me* :

Ex. *achetez-moi du papier à écrire*, buy me some writing paper.

But, *achetez-m'en*, buy me some.

With the other pronouns a preposition would be used :

As, *achetez-en pour vous, pour lui*, buy some for yourself, for him.

114. **Le**, expressing a state, often corresponds to *so*, and then is invariable :

Ex. *êtes-vous fatiguée, madame ?* are you tired, madam ? *Oui, je le suis*, yes, I am.

But *êtes-vous l'institutrice de ma petite fille*? are you my little girl's governess? *Je la suis*, I am she.

Êtes-vous les élèves de mon beau-frère? are you the pupils of my brother-in-law? *Nous les sommes*, we are they.

These examples show that when the pronoun *le* represents a noun, or an adjective taken in the sense of one, as *êtes-vous la malade*? are you the sick [lady or woman]? *je la suis*, I am she, the pronoun must agree with the noun or adjective.

Le is invariable when no article precedes the noun or adjective :

Ex. *êtes-vous malade*? *je le suis*. Are you ill? I am [ill].

Le is used to represent an adjective :

Ex. *il était fâché et il devait l'être*, he was vexed and he had reason to be so, i.e. to be vexed.

Sometimes *le* stands not only for a word, but for a whole group :

Ex. *autant que je le puis je travaille pour ma famille*, as much as I can I work for my family.

Here *le* represents *autant que je puis travailler pour ma famille*.

Le with *ne* is used in a comparative :

Ex. *il est moins paresseux qu'il ne l'était*, he is less idle than he was.

When speaking of animals or things, *en* and *y* are used instead of *de lui*, *d'elle*, &c. :

Ex. *ce noyer est énorme, on en ferait une table superbe*, this walnut-tree is enormous, a superb table might be made of it.

115. *En* may be applied to persons as well as things when used as the genitive of the conjunctive personal pronoun of the third person :

Ex. *allez-vous à Bouvines*? are you going to Bouvines? *non, j'en reviens*, no, I am returning thence.

On revient d'une erreur à force d'en rougir, one corrects oneself of a fault by dint of blushing for it.

Le meilleur moyen de se débarrasser d'un ennemi, c'est de s'en faire un

ami, the best way of getting rid of an enemy is to make a friend of him.

In some idiomatic verbs *en* means *from* :

Ex. *s'en aller*, to go from or away ; *en appeler*, to appeal. In others, as *s'en prendre à*, to blame, it is untranslatable.

116. The disjunctive pronouns are used after a comparative : ex. *elle est plus grande que lui*, she is taller than he, and after the imperative, *dites-moi*, tell me.

Lui, leur, are both conjunctive and disjunctive pronouns :

Ils leur ont dit, they have told them.

Dites-lui de monter, tell him to go upstairs.

The disjunctive pronouns answering to *se* are *lui, elle, eux, elles* ; *soi* is only used when it refers to *on* :

Ex. *je me trouve malheureux toutes les fois que je pense à moi-même*, I am always unhappy when I think of myself.

Soi-même means *oneself* :

Ex. *il faut conduire ses affaires soi-même*, one must manage one's business oneself.

SYNTAX OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

117. **Mine, thine, &c.**, when used with *être*, can be rendered by *à moi, à toi, &c.* more correctly than by *le mien, le tien, &c.* :

Ex. *ce carton est à moi*, this bandbox is mine.

Ces brouillons sont à Marcelle, these rough copies are Marcelle's.

My own, thy own, &c., when meaning *belonging to*, can be translated in the same way :

As, *j'ai une chambre à moi*, I have a room of my own.

But if *own* is meant in the closest personal sense, use *propre* :

As, *de ses propres yeux vu*, seen with his own eyes.

Mine and *thine* in the sense of property are translated by *le mien* and *le tien* :

Ex. *il ne voit pas la différence entre le mien et le tien*, he does not see the difference between mine and thine.

Voulez-vous du mien ? will you have some of mine.

Merci, Édouard m'a déjà donné du sien, thank you, Edward has already given me some of his.

Of mine, of thine, &c. when meaning *one of*, should be translated by *un, une de* :

Ex. *une de mes sœurs*, a sister of mine.

Un de mes frères, a brother of mine.

But when it cannot bear this meaning, use the possessive adjective :

Ex. *votre élève me gêne*, that pupil of yours is in my way.

SYNTAX OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

118. THE *e* of *ce* is elided before *est*, *était*, *étaient*, *et en* followed by any part of *être* :

As, *c'est lui*, it is he.

C'en est fait de lui, it is all over with him.

In other cases the *e* is retained before *en* :

Ex. *ce en quoi il peut nous nuire*, that in which he can injure us.

It is, preceding an adjective, is sometimes translated by *il est*, sometimes by *c'est*. If *it* means *that*, *c'est* is correct ; otherwise *il* is used :

Ex. *c'est bien difficile*, it. i.e. *that thing already spoken of*, is very difficult.

Il n'est pas facile de le faire, it is not easy to do it.

Here *il est* is clearly an impersonal verb.

119. When *être* is followed by a *possessive* or *demonstrative* adjective, or an article, *ce* is used instead of *il*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles* :

As, *c'est une Grecque*, she is a Greek.

Ce sont mes plumes de fer, they are my steel pens.

Ce ne serait pas mon désir, it would not be my desire.

But *elle est Grecque*, she is a Greek ; as here there is no article.

152 SYNTAX OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

When *ce* answers to *that* and an infinitive follows, *to* is translated by *à* :

Ex. *c'est triste à dire*, that is sad to say.

After *il est*, *to* before an infinitive is rendered by *de* :

Ex. *il est triste de la voir*, it is sad to see it.

Ce is often used as the subject of a proposition :

Ex. *Platon disait de l'homme que c'était un animal à deux jambes et sans plumes*, Plato said of man that he was an animal with two legs and without wings.

Je lis et relis La Fontaine, c'est mon auteur favori, I read La Fontaine again and again, he is my favourite author.

In such cases *il*, *elle*, &c., might be used, but *ce* is more in accordance with the genius of the French language.

When the second part of a sentence begins with *être* followed by an infinitive or a noun, *ce* must be used :

Ex. *ce que je veux, c'est votre bonheur*, what I wish is your happiness.

It may be omitted at pleasure when either part of the sentence can be the predicate of the other :

As, *dessiner et lire, c'est leur seul plaisir*, drawing and reading are their only pleasures. Here the *ce* is merely used to strengthen the sentence, much like a resuming pronoun. It would be equally correct to say, *leur seul plaisir est de lire et de dessiner*.

Ce is used as the antecedent of the relative pronoun *qui* :

Ex. *ce qui m'aide*, what helps me.

Ce dont je parle, that of which I speak.

Ce à quoi il faut penser, that of which one must think.

Ce que vous dites, what you say.

In interrogative phrases *ce* follows the noun :

Ex. *est-ce un bien pour moi que d'être millionnaire*? is it an advantage to me to be a millionaire?

But when it sounds harsh, as in such phrases as *pourrait-ce? furent-ces?* the sentence should be turned so as to avoid it :

Ex. *est-ce que ce pourrait être eux?* could it have been they?

120. **Que de** before an infinitive in the second part of a sentence gives energy, as above. It would be equally correct to say, *est-ce que d'être millionnaire est un bien pour moi ?*

When *ce* is followed by a plural noun, or the third person plural of a verb, the verb must also be plural :

Ex. *sont-ce des Français qui agissent ainsi ?* could French people act thus ?

Ce sont eux, it is they.

C'est eux is, however, also used, and *c'est, c'était, &c.* must be used with *nous* and *vous* :

Ex. *c'est nous*, it is we.

There is a shade of difference which should be noticed between *quelle heure est-ce*, and *quelle heure est-il*. The first means, what time have I just heard strike ? The second is a mere inquiry as to what time it may be.

SYNTAX OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

121. **Qui** is sometimes used in an absolute sense, especially in poetry, with *celui* or *celle* understood :

Ex. *qui veut être aimé doit être aimable*, he who would be loved should be loveable.

Occasionally *qui . . . qui* means *some* :

Ex. *qui lui présente des gâteaux, qui des châtaignes*, some offer him cakes, some chestnuts.

But *qui* used absolutely ought to be singular, and relate only to persons.

When interrogative it may be plural :

As, *qui sont ces jeunes gens ?* who are those young people ?

Ces dames, qui étaient-elles ? who were those ladies ?

After *parmi*, among, *lesquels*, not *qui*, is employed :

Ex. *les pêcheurs parmi lesquels je me trouvais*, the fishermen among whom I found myself.

Qui in the *nominative* and *que* in the *objective* case may be used for persons or things :

Ex. *le curé qui a prêché*, the curate who preached.

Le rosier que j'avais acheté, the rose-tree which I had bought.

The importance of distinguishing between *qui* and *que* will be seen in the two next sentences. *Le meurtrier qui frappa le vieillard*, the murderer who struck the old man; *le meurtrier que frappa le vieillard*, the murderer whom the old man struck. Again, *le professeur qui vit Jean*, the master who saw John. The sense would be entirely reversed by substituting *que*; it would then mean the master whom John saw.

122. *Que*, though usually the direct object, as in *les lettres que j'ai écrites*, the letters which I have written, is absolute, like *qui*, in interrogative sentences :

Ex. *que dites-vous ?* what do you say ?

Que cherchent-ils ? what are they looking for ?

It is often employed where in English we have a sentence with *whose* and a personal pronoun in the accusative, both relating to the same person :

As, he is a hypocrite *whose* vices have rendered *him* infamous for ever, *c'est un hypocrite que ses vices ont rendu infâme à jamais*.

Que represents *whose*, as *dont* could not be used in this construction, and *him* is omitted.

123. *Quoi* is absolute when it means *what thing*; it is chiefly used in questions and doubtful sentences, and applies only to things. It is always in the objective case, except in such locutions as, *quoi ! vous croyez . . .*, what ! you believe . . . ; *quoi qu'on dise*, whatever they may say.

With the meaning of 'whatever' *quoi que* governs the subjunctive.

Preceded by a preposition, it replaces *que*, to mean 'that thing' :

Ex. *c'est à quoi je réfléchis*, that is what I am considering.

Il n'y a rien sur quoi on ait tant disputé, there is nothing on which people have disputed so much.

124. **Dont** must always have an antecedent :

L'affaire dont il parle, the business of which he speaks.

Heureux le peuple dont l'histoire est ennuyeuse, happy the nation whose history is dull.

C'est l'homme dont la maison a été brûlée, it is the man whose house has been burned.

These two last examples show that a noun depending on *dont*, as *l'histoire*, *la maison*, &c., must take an article.

125. When a relative pronoun is divided from its antecedent by another noun, *whose* or *of whom* is rendered by *de qui*, not *dont*, and *of which*, by *duquel*, &c. :

Ex. *Fouquet, aux bontés de qui il devait sa fortune*, Fouquet, to whose goodness he owed his fortune.

Des échelles à l'aide desquelles il monte, ladders, by the aid of which he mounts.

When *from which* means origin, birth, *dont* translates it :

As *la maison dont je sors est illustre*, the house [or family] from which I descend, is illustrious.

In other cases *duquel*, &c. or *d'où* is used :

Ex. *la maison d'où je sors est louée*, the house from, or out of, which I come is let.

D'où is used with names of things, or to express a conclusion :

C'est un malheur d'où il faut conclure, it is a misfortune from which, or whence, one must conclude.

SYNTAX OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

126. THE letter *l* is often placed before *on* when it follows *et*, *si*, *où*, *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, unless a word comes next beginning with *l* ; ex. *si on lui parle*, if they speak to him ; but, *si l'on me voit*, if they see me. This letter is merely used when agreeable to the ear, just as *t* is now used in *vous aime-t-il* ? does he love you ? &c.

On comes from the Latin *homo*, a man, and in old French meant *man* as well as *they*, *one*, &c., and probably this *l* is the definite article *le*, which of course was used with it, when it meant 'the man.' It is often used to avoid the passive voice; ex. *on m'a assuré*, I have been assured.

Grammars tell us, when *chacun* stands *before* the direct complement, that *leur*, *leurs*, should be used; ex. *ils ont opiné chacun selon leur lumière*, they have voted each according to *their* lights; but custom tends more and more to simplify this rule by using only *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

Chacun of course has no plural :

Ex. *chacun de ces collégiens*, each of these schoolboys.

127. *Quelqu'un* may be used in an absolute sense, as *avez-vous rencontré quelqu'un ?* have you met any one ? or a relative one, *quelques-unes de vos pensionnaires*, some of your boarders.

Quiconque is invariable, and refers to persons only ; of course the adjective is feminine when it refers to a feminine object :

Ex. *quiconque de ces dames se montrera méchante*, whichever of these ladies shows herself spiteful,

Quiconque requires the verb in the singular.

In speaking of things it is replaced by *quoi que ce soit* :

Ex. *quoi que ce soit qu'on perde*, whatever one may lose.

After *quoi que ce soit* the verb must be in the subjunctive.

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

128. A VERB must agree with its subject in number and person :

Ex. *il dort et nous veillons*, he sleeps and we keep watch.

C'est moi qui vous le dis, it is I who tell you so.

When two or more subjects in the singular mean dif-

ferent things, and the same number beings in all. It must be plural :

Ex. *soldats, ouvriers, pauvres et riches* tous se plaignent. Soldiers, workmen, poor and rich, all were complaining.

Some authors put the verb in the singular when two nouns are joined by *et* and *ou* with *un*, *un* well as *un*, or when *chacun*, *quel*, *personnel*, *quel* or *quel* names between the subject and the verb. But there is no authority for this.

When the subjects are of different persons the verb is plural :

Ex. *vous et moi, nous sommes d'accord*, you and I are going to see to work.

If any of the subjects should be of the first person plural, the verb agrees with it :

Ex. *Jeanne et nous, nous sommes fiers*. Jeanne and I are going to read.

If none of the subjects is in the first person plural, but any is of the second, then that is used for all : •

Ex. *vous et Laure, vous chantez très bien*, you and Laure sing very well.

The third person is only used when all the subjects belong to it :

Ex. *Edgard, Alain et Gaston jouent aux billes*, Edgar, Alan, and Gaston are playing at marbles.

It will be noticed that where the subjects are different, a resuming pronoun precedes the verb.

No precise rule can be given as to when a verb is plural after a collective noun : it depends on the sense :

Ex. *une foule d'enfants le suivaient*, a crowd of children followed him.

Here the children, not the crowd, are made prominent.

Une troupe d'assassins entra dans la chambre de Coligny, a troop of assassins entered Coligny's bedroom.

Here 'troop' is made the leading idea.

On comes from the Latin *homo*, a man, and in old French meant *man* as well as *they*, *one*, &c., and probably this *l* is the definite article *le*, which of course was used with it, when it meant 'the man.' It is often used to avoid the passive voice; ex. *on m'a assuré*, I have been assured.

Grammars tell us, when *chacun* stands *before* the direct complement, that *leur*, *leurs*, should be used; ex. *ils ont opiné chacun selon leur lumière*, they have voted each according to *their* lights; but custom tends more and more to simplify this rule by using only *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

Chacun of course has no plural:

Ex. *chacun de ces collégiens*, each of these schoolboys.

127. *Quelqu'un* may be used in an absolute sense, as *avez-vous rencontré quelqu'un*? have you met any one? or a relative one, *quelques-unes de vos pensionnaires*, some of your boarders.

Quiconque is invariable, and refers to persons only; of course the adjective is feminine when it refers to a feminine object:

Ex. *quiconque de ces dames se montrera méchante*, whichever of these ladies shows herself spiteful,

Quiconque requires the verb in the singular.

In speaking of things it is replaced by *quoi que ce soit*:

Ex. *quoi que ce soit qu'on perde*, whatever one may lose.

After *quoi que ce soit* the verb must be in the subjunctive.

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

128. A VERB must agree with its subject in number and person:

Ex. *il dort et nous veillons*, he sleeps and we keep watch.
C'est moi qui vous le dis, it is I who tell you so.

When two or more subjects in the singular mean dif-

ferent things, and the same number belongs to all, it must be plural :

Ex. *soldats, ouvriers, pauvres et riches, tous le pleurèrent*, soldiers, workmen, poor and rich, all wept him.

Some authors put the verb in the singular when two nouns are joined by *ainsi que, aussi bien que*, as well as, &c., or when *chacun, nul, personne, rien*, or *tout*, comes between the subject and the verb, but there is no absolute rule as to this.

When the subjects are of different persons, the verb is plural :

Ex. *vous et moi, nous allons travailler*, you and I are going to set to work.

If any of the subjects should be of the first person plural, the verb agrees with it :

Ex. *Jeanne et nous, nous allons lire*, Jane and I are going to read.

If none of the subjects is in the first person plural, but any is of the second, then that is used for all : •

Ex. *vous et Laure, vous chantez très bien*, you and Laura sing very well.

The third person is only used when all the subjects belong to it :

Ex. *Edgard, Alain et Gaston jouent aux billes*, Edgar, Alan, and Gaston are playing at marbles.

It will be noticed that where the subjects are different, a resuming pronoun precedes the verb.

No precise rule can be given as to when a verb is plural after a collective noun : it depends on the sense :

Ex. *une foule d'enfants le suivaient*, a crowd of children followed him.

Here the children, not the crowd, are made prominent.

Une troupe d'assassins entra dans la chambre de Coligny, a troop of assassins entered Coligny's bedroom.

Here 'troop' is made the leading idea.

129. After adverbs of quantity, as *plusieurs*, several, *beaucoup*, much, the verb agrees with the noun which they qualify :

As *plusieurs écrivains l'ont soutenu*, several writers have maintained it.

La plupart n'y pensent pas, most people do not think of it.

Plus d'un, more than one, however, governs a singular.

The verb is singular when several subjects are nearly synonymous :

Ex. *son courage, son intrépidité excite l'admiration*, his courage and intrepidity excite admiration.

Or when there is a gradation :

Ex. *votre intérêt, votre honneur, votre pays vous demande ce sacrifice*, your interest, your honour, and your country demand this sacrifice from you.

The Academy has decided that when subjects of the same person are disconnected by *ou*, or, the verb must be singular :

As *le naufrage ou la captivité paraissait inévitable*, shipwreck or captivity seemed inevitable ;

but that if the subjects are of different persons, the verb is plural :

Ex. *vous ou lui, vous en êtes capables*, you or he are capable of it.

THE INFINITIVE.

130. To understand the way in which the infinitive is used in French, we must remember that it is regarded as a *verbal noun* ; in other words, a noun representing the action of the verb, unfettered by time or person. Therefore it can be subject or object ; stand alone, or be followed by a preposition :

Ex. *mentir est honteux*, lying is shameful.

Elle ne sait pas chanter, she does not know how to sing.

Vous m'empêchez d'écrire, you hinder me from writing.

C'est bon à manger, it is good to eat.

The infinitive is often represented in English by a participle present taken substantively, as in *you hinder me from*

writing, but this participle must never be thus used in French. Again, infinitives which have become nouns, as *le boire et le manger*, are translated by present participles, *eating and drinking*.

When used as the direct complement after *devoir*, to owe ; *faire*, to make ; *falloir*, to be obliged ; *laisser*, to let or leave ; *pouvoir*, to be able ; *vouloir*, to will ; and after verbs of motion, seeing or hearing, the infinitive stands without a preposition :

Ex. *je dois sortir*, I ought to go out.

Je viens vous consulter, I am come to consult you.

Venez lire, come and read.

Courez le dire, run and say so.

When a verb of motion is followed by an infinitive, as above, *and* should be omitted in French. *Go and find him*, must be rendered, *allez le trouver*.

131. Generally speaking, transitive verbs require *de* before an infinitive following ; ex. *vous m'empêchez d'y aller*, you hinder me from going there. Of course this does not apply to such as govern a dative.

An infinitive is often used after *être*, to avoid that passive construction very common in English, but repugnant to French ears :

Ex. *ce n'est pas à refuser*, that is not to be refused.

Cette page est à recopier, this page must be recopied.

There is also an elliptical use of the infinitive which should be noticed :

Ex. *s'adresser à*, write to, for information.

Voir page trois, see third page, &c.

Pour, in order to ; *sans*, without ; *après*, after, and compound prepositions governing the participle present in English, govern an infinitive in French :

Ex. *sans voir, sans écouter*, without seeing, without hearing.

Après avoir balayé le plancher, after having swept the floor.

Avant de faire la chambre, before doing the bedroom.

COMPLEMENT OF THE VERB.

132. VERBS which take an objective case with no preposition are said to have a direct complement :

As j'ouvre cette boîte, I open this box.

Those which require a preposition before the noun which follows them have an indirect complement :

Ex. je pense à Louis, I think of Louis.

Many verbs govern both these complements :

Ex. je donne cette boîte à Louis, rendez-la-lui, I give this box to Louis, give it back to him.

It will be seen from the example *je pense à Louis*, that the prepositions following verbs are not necessarily alike in French and English.

133. If there are two verbs, one governing a direct and the other an indirect complement, they cannot have a noun as a common complement ; it would be equally incorrect in French and English to say, *je vais et je retourne de Blois*, I go and return from Blois.

In English the sense might be suspended ; thus, I go to and come back from Blois ; but this is not allowable in French. As *aller*, meaning to go to a place, governs *à*, and *retourner* governs *de*, the sentence must run thus : *je vais à Blois et j'en reviens*, literally, I go to Blois and I return from it.

Again, as in English, a verb cannot take two indirect complements relating to the same thing ; we cannot say either *c'est à lui à qui je pense*, or it is of him of whom I am thinking, but *c'est à lui que je pense*, it is of him that I am thinking.

134. When a verb has two objects of about equal length, the direct comes first :

Ex. Philippe Auguste vainquit ses ennemis à Bouvines, Philip Augustus conquered his enemies at Bouvines.

But when the direct object is the longer, it usually stands last :

Ex. *il faut à mes frères des plumes et du papier.*

This is usually settled less by rule than by ear.

A verb cannot have *two* indirect complements when one merely repeats the other ; thus, *c'est de lui dont on médit*, it is of him of whom they speak calumniously, is bad French, as *de* and *dont* are both indirect complements, and repeat each other. We must say *c'est de lui qu'on médit*, using *que* instead of *dont*.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

135. TRANSITIVE verbs take *avoir* as their auxiliary.

Ex. *il a écrit un billet*, he has written a letter.

And almost all neuter ones do so, too, if they express action,

As, *il a couru*, he has run.

There are, however, a few exceptions, as *mourir*, to die ; *naître*, to be born ; *devenir*, to become, already noticed in the irregular verbs.

Certain neuter verbs take *avoir* when the action is the chief idea :—

As, *il a passé tantôt*, he passed just now ;

and *être* when the result of an action or a state is spoken of :—

As *il est sorti*, he is out ; *ce mot est passé en proverbe*, this saying is become proverbial.

Échapper, to escape, takes *avoir*, when it means to escape notice :—

Ce mot m'a échappé, I did not catch that word ;

but *être*, when it means to do something unawares.

Ce mot m'est échappé, I said it unwittingly.

The past participle of neuter verbs conjugated with *être* is used as in a Latin deponent, as if an active past participle.

As, *oe favori, tombé en disgrâce*, this favourite having fallen into disgrace.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

136. THE Participle is so called because it partakes of the nature both of the verb and adjective ; of the verb when it expresses an action (which can be also expressed by a tense of the verb) ; of the adjective when it describes a state. In this last case only is it variable, following the rules which govern adjectives :

Ex. *ils flottaient mourant de faim*, they were floating, dying with hunger.

Mourant might be replaced by *pendant qu'ils mouraient*, whilst they were dying, and is therefore invariable. But *ils flottaient mourants*, i.e. in a dying condition.

On *les voyait se parlant*, they saw them speaking to one another. This might be turned *qui se parlaient*. It is therefore invariable. But *des portraits parlants*, speaking likenesses.

The present participle is always invariable when it has a direct complement :

Ex. *les auteurs corrigeant les épreuves*, the authors correcting their proof-sheets.

When it has an indirect or a circumstantial complement it is variable :

Ex. *les oppresseurs du peuple à leur tour gémissants*, the oppressors of the people groaning in their turn.

It is easy to see when such a participle is variable by seeing whether it can be replaced by some undoubted adjective, as here, *les oppresseurs endurcis*, the hardened oppressors. Since *endurcis* agrees, so would *gémissants*.

When the participle precedes an adverbial complement, such as *toujours*, it is invariable :

Ex. *les hommes espérant toujours le repos et ne le trouvant jamais*, men hoping ever for rest and never finding it.

But *ces hommes, toujours projetants, toujours remuants*, these men, always planning, always restless ; for here the participle *follows* the adverb.

Used with *être*, it always agrees with its noun :

Ex. *ces contes sont endormants*, these stories are sleepy.

137. The present participle is used after nearly all prepositions in English ; ex. in running ; by hoping ; from working ; but in French it can only be preceded by *en* :

Ex. *elle descendit en courant*, she went down running.

The use of the present participle after an active verb, as *I see them coming*, is almost unknown in French. In such a sentence sometimes the infinitive, sometimes the indicative mood with the relative *qui*, is employed :

Ex. *je les vois courir*, or *je les vois qui courent*. Now and then, but only to give additional force, the participle present is used, as *je les vois travaillant sans cesse*, I see them working unceasingly.

Nouns formed from present participles follow the rules for the gender and plural of substantives :

Ex. *des croyants*, believers.

138. The difference of spelling between certain present participles and adjectives must be noticed. These are :—

PARTICIPLES,

adhérant, adhering
affluent, abounding
coincident, coinciding
excellent, excelling
extravagant, rambling
fatigant, tiring
intrigant, plotting
négligent, neglecting
précédant, preceding
résident, residing

ADJECTIVES.

adhérent, adherent
affluent, confluent
coincident, coincident
excellent, excellent
extravagant, extravagant
fatigant, wearisome
intrigant, intriguing
négligent, neglectful
précédent, previous
résident, resident

Of course all the participles *must* end in *ant*.

The adjectives do not come from the verbs, but are derived directly from Latin, and are not true participles.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

139. WHEN a past participle is used without an auxiliary verb, it agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies, like an adjective.

Ex. *des livres nouvellement reçus*, books lately received; *une tasse cassée*, a broken cup.

When used with *être*, it agrees with its subject in gender and number, as,

Vos devoirs sont-ils écrits? are your exercises written?

The past participles of passive verbs, which all have *être* for their auxiliary, follow the same rule, as do those of the few neuter verbs which do not take *avoir*:

Ex. *elle est arrivée*, she has arrived; *ils sont aimés*, they are loved.

140. When a past participle is preceded by any transitive verb except *avoir*, it agrees with its direct complement.

Ex. *nous nous trouvâmes resserrés entre deux montagnes noires*, we found ourselves shut in between two black mountains.

The past participle with *avoir* **never** agrees with its subject:

Ex. *elles ont fini*, they have finished;

and only with its direct object, when this precedes it:

Ex. *ils ont vendu la maison*, they have sold the house.

Here the participle cannot agree with *ils*, because that is the subject, and to the question sold *what*? we cannot reply *what*, because the sentence is finished by a complement which comes

after the participle. This, therefore, remains unchanged. But if we said, *la maison qu'il a vendue*, the house which he has sold, the direct object precedes the participle, which therefore agrees with it.

Again, *je vous ai rapporté votre boussole*, I have brought you back your compass, but, *voici votre boussole, je l'ai rapportée*, here is your compass; I have brought it back; for *l'* (*la*, it), the direct complement, precedes the past participle.

With intransitive verbs the past participle is invariable, there being no direct object.

Ex. *ils avaient parlé*, they had spoken; *elle a vécu*, she has lived.

With impersonal verbs, or with verbs used impersonally and conjugated with *être*, the past participle is invariable.

Ex. *les mois qu'il a plu*, the months that it has rained.

Il est survenu un ouragan, a hurricane has arisen.

Les chaleurs qu'il a fait, the heat which there has been.

141. In the case of reflexive verbs the past participle agrees with the direct object.

Ex. *elles se sont flattées*, they have flattered themselves, *être* being employed instead of *avoir*.

We must apply the same rules as to the past participle as with *avoir*. Flattered whom? themselves. Therefore, the participle is feminine plural.

Elle s'est achetée deux carnets, she has bought herself two memorandum books. Bought what? Not *se*, herself, of course, but bought for herself, the indirect complement, two note-books. *Carnets*, however, follows the past participle, which therefore is invariable.

In *les lettres qu'ils se sont écrites*, the letters which they have written, the participle agrees with the direct object, which precedes it, while in *ils se sont écrit*, they have written to each other, *se* is the indirect object, and the participle therefore is invariable.

For the same reason it is unchanged in *ils se sont parlé*, they spoke to each other, and variable in *ils se sont lavés*, they have washed themselves.

With essentially reflexive verbs, that is, those that never can be used but with two pronouns, the past participle agrees with the second pronoun.

Ex. *elle s'est repentie*, she has repented herself

S'arroger is the only essentially reflective verb which breaks this rule.

Ex. *ils se sont arrogé des droits*, they have claimed rights; and here a dative seems implied: they have claimed rights *for* themselves, or *to* themselves.

142. There is some difficulty in seeing when a past participle followed by an infinitive is or is not variable.

Ex. *pour être sûr de la vérité il faut l'avoir entendu proclamer d'une manière positive*, to be sure of the truth one must have heard it announced in a positive manner.

One must have heard what? not *the truth*, but *announcing of the truth*. Here the direct complement follows the participle, which therefore remains unaltered.

If the infinitive can be expressed by a tense of the active voice or by a participle present, the past participle is variable.

Ex. *nous les avons vus courir*, or *qui couraient*, or *courant*, we have seen them running.

If only the passive verb can be employed, or if the past participle come from an intransitive verb, it does not vary.

Ex. *les airs que j'ai entendu jouer*, the airs which I have heard played, that is, *being* played. But, *la personne que j'ai entendue jouer*.

When an intransitive verb is used transitively, the past participle is variable.

Ex. *les idiomes qui se sont parlés au moyen-âge*, the dialects which were spoken in the middle ages.

Preceded by an adverb of quantity, the past participle agrees with the complement of the adverb.

Ex. *combien de pommes avez-vous cueillies?* how many apples have you gathered? *Pommes* is feminine plural, therefore the participle must be so too.

La grande quantité de mauvaises herbes que j'ai sarclées, the great quantity of weeds which I have pulled up.

When *le peu* means lack or want, the participle is invariable.

Ex. *elle regretta le peu de moments qu'elle y avait consacré*, she regretted the few moments which she had devoted to it. Here it is the lack of time which is regretted.

Le peu d'efforts que j'ai faits ont été suivis de résultats heureux, the few efforts which I made have had happy results. Here the meaning is even the few efforts made were rewarded, and the idea is plural.

A past participle between *que . . . que* is invariable :

Ex. *les mandats que j'ai su que vous recevriez*, the post-office orders which I knew you would receive. The first *que* is the direct object of the second verb, and the second is a conjunction.

It is also invariable when it has as direct object the pronoun *le*, standing for *cela*, that or so.

Ex. *cette nouvelle est plus grave que je ne l'avais pensé*, that news is more serious than I expected. Here *le* stands for *it to be*.

When the pronoun *en* is preceded by an adverb of quantity, the participle agrees with the noun which *en* represents.

Plus il a acheté des livres, plus il en a lus, the more books he has bought, the more he has read.

If, however, the adverb follows, or the sentence is interrogative, the participle is invariable.

Ex. *combien en avez-vous rendu* ? how many have you sold ? *j'en ai très peu rendu*, I have sold very few.

143. *Dormir*, to sleep ; *durer*, to last ; *régner*, to reign ; *vivre*, to live, can never be used transitively, because there is a preposition understood.

Ex. *les années qu'il (pendant lesquelles) a régné*, the years which he has reigned.

When any part of a verb is understood after *dû*, owed, ought ; *permis*, allowed ; *pu*, been able ; *voulu*, been willing, these participles are invariable.

As *je lui ai rendu tous les bons offices que j'ai pu*, I have rendered him all the good offices I could ; *lui rendre* is understood.

Fait, followed by an infinitive, is invariable.

Ex. *les robes que j'ai fait faire*, the dresses which I have had made; *les églises qu'on a fait bâtir*, the churches which they have had built. But, *les robes que j'ai faites*, the dresses which I have made. In the two first examples the direct object *follows*, while in the third it precedes the past participle.

Coûté and *valu*, when used figuratively, agree with their subject, whether the sentence be inverted or straightforward :

As *les peines que m'ont coûtées vos malheurs*, the troubles which your misfortunes have cost me; or, straightforward, as *les peines que vos malheurs m'ont coûtées*;

but in the sense of price or value they are invariable.

Ex. *les milliers de francs que ce bâtiment a coûté*, the thousands of francs which this building cost.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

144. WHEN there is more than one verb in a sentence the tense of the second depends on that of the first.

Ex. *j'écrivais quand il lisait*, I used to write while he was reading.

After the past imperfect conditional, and the compound past tenses of the indicative mood, the imperfect and past imperfect of the subjunctive are used.

Ex. *je ne doutais pas qu'il fût blessé*, I did not doubt that he was wounded.

Vous avez exigé que je payasse tout de suite, you have required that I should pay immediately.

Sometimes, however, the sense absolutely requires a past tense, as in *je ne crois pas qu'il eût tort*, I do not believe that he was wrong; *croyez-vous qu'elle ait reçu mon billet*, do you think she has received my letter? but otherwise the subjunctive must be used, as *je doute s'il viendra*, I doubt if he will come.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

J'écris lorsque vous écrivez.

J'écrivais { quand vous lisiez.
quand vous entrâtes.
quand vous avez lu.

J'ai écrit { aussitôt que vous l'avez voulu.
pendant que vous travailliez.

Je travaillai { quand vous le demandâtes.
quand j'eus fini d'écrire.

J'irai { si on le veut.
si vous avez fini votre ouvrage.
quand vous voudrez.
quand ils seront venus.

J'avais écrit { quand vous partiez.
quand vous partîtes.
quand vous êtes parti.
quand vous fûtes parti.

Quand j'eus parlé on partit.

J'irais { si vous le désiriez.
si elle avait fini.

J'aurais écrit { pendant qu'il aurait étudié.
si vous l'aviez voulu.

Je doute
Je douterai
Quand j'aurai douté } qu'il le fasse.

Je souhaitai
J'ai souhaité
J'avais souhaité
Je souhaiterais
J'aurais souhaité } que tu le fisses.

Je désire que vous ayez écrit.

Je voulais
Je voulais
J'ai voulu
Quand j'eus voulu
J'avais voulu
Je voudrais
J'aurais voulu } qu'il fût parti.

Fait, followed by an infinitive, is invariable.

Ex. *les robes que j'ai fait faire*, the dresses which I have had made; *les églises qu'on a fait bâtir*, the churches which they have had built. But, *les robes que j'ai faites*, the dresses which I have made. In the two first examples the direct object *follows*, while in the third it precedes the past participle.

Coûté and *valu*, when used figuratively, agree with their subject, whether the sentence be inverted or straight-forward :

As *les peines que m'ont coûtées vos malheurs*, the troubles which your misfortunes have cost me; or, straightforward, as *les peines que vos malheurs m'ont coûtées*;

but in the sense of price or value they are invariable.

Ex. *les milliers de francs que ce bâtiment a coûté*, the thousands of francs which this building cost.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

144. WHEN there is more than one verb in a sentence the tense of the second depends on that of the first.

Ex. *j'écrivais quand il lisait*, I used to write while he was reading.

After the past imperfect conditional, and the compound past tenses of the indicative mood, the imperfect and past imperfect of the subjunctive are used.

Ex. *je ne doutais pas qu'il fût blessé*, I did not doubt that he was wounded.

Vous avez exigé que je payasse tout de suite, you have required that I should pay immediately.

Sometimes, however, the sense absolutely requires a past tense, as in *je ne crois pas qu'il eût tort*, I do not believe that he was wrong; *croyez-vous qu'elle ait reçu mon billet*, do you think that she has received my letter? but otherwise the present of the subjunctive must be used, as *je doute s'il vienne*, I doubt if he will come.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

J'écris lorsque vous écrivez.

J'écrivais { quand vous lisiez.
quand vous entrâtes.
quand vous avez lu.

J'ai écrit { aussitôt que vous l'avez voulu.
pendant que vous travailliez.

Je travaillai { quand vous le demandâtes.
quand j'eus fini d'écrire.

J'irai { si on le veut.
si vous avez fini votre ouvrage.
quand vous voudrez.
quand ils seront venus.

J'avais écrit { quand vous partiez.
quand vous partîtes.
quand vous êtes parti.
quand vous fûtes parti.

Quand j'eus parlé on partit.

J'irais { si vous le désiriez.
si elle avait fini.

J'aurais écrit { pendant qu'il aurait étudié.
si vous l'aviez voulu.

Je doute
Je douterai
Quand j'aurai douté } qu'il le fasse.

Je souhaitai
J'ai souhaité
J'avais souhaité
Je souhaiterais
J'aurais souhaité } que tu le fisses.

Je désire que vous ayez écrit.

Je voulais
Je voulus
J'ai voulu
Quand j'eus voulu
J'avais voulu
Je voudrais
J'aurais voulu } qu'il fût parti.

Fait, followed by an infinitive, is invariable.

Ex. *les robes que j'ai fait faire*, the dresses which I have had made; *les églises qu'on a fait bâtir*, the churches which they have had built. But, *les robes que j'ai faites*, the dresses which I have made. In the two first examples the direct object *follows*, while in the third it precedes the past participle.

Coûté and *valu*, when used figuratively, agree with their subject, whether the sentence be inverted or straight-forward :

As *les peines que m'ont coûtées vos malheurs*, the troubles which your misfortunes have cost me ; or, straightforward, as *les peines que vos malheurs m'ont coûtées* ;

but in the sense of price or value they are invariable.

Ex. *les milliers de francs que ce bâtiment a coûté*, the thousands of francs which this building cost.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

144. WHEN there is more than one verb in a sentence the tense of the second depends on that of the first.

Ex. *j'écrivais quand il lisait*, I used to write while he was reading.

After the past imperfect conditional, and the compound past tenses of the indicative mood, the imperfect and past imperfect of the subjunctive are used.

Ex. *je ne doutais pas qu'il fût blessé*, I did not doubt that he was wounded.

Vous avez exigé que je payasse tout de suite, you have required that I should pay immediately.

Sometimes, however, the sense absolutely requires a past tense, as in *je ne crois pas qu'il eût tort*, I do not believe that he was wrong ; *croyez-vous qu'elle ait reçu mon billet*, do you think that she has received my letter ? but otherwise the present of the subjunctive must be used, as *je doute s'il vienne*, I doubt if he will come.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

J'écris lorsque vous écrivez.

J'écrivais { quand vous lisiez.
quand vous entrâtes.
quand vous avez lu.

J'ai écrit { aussitôt que vous l'avez voulu.
pendant que vous travailliez.

Je travaillai { quand vous le demandâtes.
quand j'eus fini d'écrire.

J'irai { si on le vent.
si vous avez fini votre ouvrage.
quand vous voudrez.
quand ils seront venus.

J'avais écrit { quand vous partiez.
quand vous partîtes.
quand vous êtes parti.
quand vous fûtes parti.

Quand j'eus parlé on partit.

J'irais { si vous le désiriez.
si elle avait fini.

J'aurais écrit { pendant qu'il aurait étudié.
si vous l'aviez voulu.

Je doute
Je douterai
Quand j'aurai douté } qu'il le fasse.

Je souhaitai
J'ai souhaité
J'avais souhaité
Je souhaiterais
J'aurais souhaité } que tu le fisses.

Je désire que vous ayez écrit.

Je voulais
Je voulus
J'ai voulu
Quand j'eus voulu
J'avais voulu
Je voudrais
J'aurais voulu } qu'il fût parti.

Fait, followed by an infinitive, is invariable.

Ex. *les robes que j'ai fait faire*, the dresses which I have had made; *les églises qu'on a fait bâtir*, the churches which they have had built. But, *les robes que j'ai faites*, the dresses which I have made. In the two first examples the direct object *follows*, while in the third it precedes the past participle.

Coûté and *valu*, when used figuratively, agree with their subject, whether the sentence be inverted or straight-forward :

As *les peines que m'ont coûtées vos malheurs*, the troubles which your misfortunes have cost me ; or, straightforward, as *les peines que vos malheurs m'ont coûtées* ;

but in the sense of price or value they are invariable.

Ex. *les milliers de francs que ce bâtiment a coûté*, the thousands of francs which this building cost.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

144. WHEN there is more than one verb in a sentence the tense of the second depends on that of the first.

Ex. *j'écrivais quand il lisait*, I used to write while he was reading.

After the past imperfect conditional, and the compound past tenses of the indicative mood, the imperfect and past imperfect of the subjunctive are used.

Ex. *je ne doutais pas qu'il fût blessé*, I did not doubt that he was wounded.

Vous avez exigé que je payasse tout de suite, you have required that I should pay immediately.

Sometimes, however, the sense absolutely requires a past tense, as in *je ne crois pas qu'il eût tort*, I do not believe that he was wrong ; *croyez-vous qu'elle ait reçu mon billet*, do you think that she has received my letter ? but otherwise the present of the subjunctive must be used, as *je doute s'il vienne*, I doubt if he will come.

CONCORDANCE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

J'écris lorsque vous écrivez.

J'écrivais { quand vous lisiez.
quand vous entrâtes.
quand vous avez lu.

J'ai écrit { aussitôt que vous l'avez voulu.
pendant que vous travailliez.

Je travaillai { quand vous le demandâtes.
quand j'eus fini d'écrire.

J'irai { si on le veut.
si vous avez fini votre ouvrage.
quand vous voudrez.
quand ils seront venus.

J'avais écrit { quand vous partiez.
quand vous partîtes.
quand vous êtes parti.
quand vous fûtes parti.

Quand j'eus parlé on partit.

J'irais { si vous le désiriez.
si elle avait fini.

J'aurais écrit { pendant qu'il aurait étudié.
si vous l'aviez voulu.

Je doute
Je douterai
Quand j'aurai douté } qu'il le fasse.

Je souhaitai
J'ai souhaité
J'avais souhaité
Je souhaiterais
J'aurais souhaité } que tu le fisses.

Je désire que vous ayez écrit.

Je voulais
Je voulus
J'ai voulu
Quand j'eus voulu
J'avais voulu
Je voudrais
J'aurais voulu } qu'il fût parti.

tion of action, as, *on le contraignit à se taire*, he was compelled to be silent.

Croire, to believe; *croire à*, to trust to, believe in; but, *je crois en Dieu*, I believe in God.

Demander, to ask for; *demandeur à*, to ask some one for something.

Échapper, to escape; *échapper à*, when there is an idea of activity or violence, as *échapper à l'orage*, *à la mort*, escape the storm, escape death, because death and the storm are supposed to pursue us. *Échapper de*, to escape from a place or situation, as *de prison*, from prison; *des mains des gendarmes*, from the hands of the police.

S'empreser de, to be eager, when the action is confined to the agent, as *je m'empresse de parler*, I am eager to speak; *s'empreser à*, when the action passes to a person, as, *il s'est empressé de rendre service à son ami*, he was eager to render service to his friend.

Essayer, implies an effort on the part of the agent, as *le malade essaie de se lever*, the patient tries to rise; *essayer à*, would express that the thing done was the important point, but is seldom used.

Se fier à, to trust to. *Se fier en* implies entire confidence; *se fier sur* implies relying on a person; ex. *je me fie sur votre adresse*, I trust to your skill.

Forcer, to force, like *contraindre*.

Goûter, to taste, to enjoy; *goûter de*, to partake of or try; ex. *goûter d'un vin*, to taste a wine; ex. *goûter du pouvoir*, to taste power.

Se hasarder à, to venture, is used when the second verb denotes an action which is the object of the first; ex. *se hasarder à faire une proposition*, to venture to make a proposition; but if the second verb expresses an action affecting the agent only, *de* is used; ex. *se hasarder de répondre*, to venture to reply.

Importer, to be of moment, when impersonal takes *de* with the infinitive; ex. *il importe de le faire*, the thing is to do it. But if the second verb refers to the object of the first the phrase must be turned thus, *il importe à votre frère de le faire*, it is of moment to your brother to do it.

Imposer, to impose silence, &c.; *imposer à*, to command respect; impose upon.

Jouer, to play; *jouer de*, to play on an instrument; *jouer à*, to play at a game; but *jouer la comédie*, play comedy; *jouer un rôle*, to play a part. *Se jouer de*, mock at; ex. *il s'est joué de mes pertes*, he has made fun of my losses.

Manquer, to fail, to be missing, &c. *Manquer à*, to neglect, fail in; ex. *il a manqué à son devoir*, he has failed in his duty; *manquer de*, to omit, to be short of; ex. *il manque d'argent, mais il ne manque pas de bonne volonté*, he is short of money, but he is not short of good will; *ne manquez pas de vous y trouver*, do not fail to be there. *S'en manquer*, to fall short of; ex. *il s'en manque de beaucoup*, far from it.

Mêler, to mix, shuffle cards, &c. in a literal sense, governs *avec*. *Mêler de l'eau avec du vin*, to mix water with wine. Metaphorically, *mêler à*; ex. *mêler l'agréable à l'utile*, to mingle the agreeable and the useful. *Se mêler à*, physically; ex. *se mêler à une foule*, to mix with the crowd. Mentally *de*; ex. *mêlez-vous de vos affaires*, mind your own business.

S'occuper de, to occupy oneself, is used with nouns; ex. *on s'occupe de son affaire*, one is occupied with one's business; *s'occuper à*, with verbs; ex. *on s'occupe à le tourmenter*, they are occupied in tormenting him.

Partager avec, to share with; *partager entre*, to divide among.

Participer à, to share in; *participer de*, to partake of the nature of.

Passer, to pass; with accusative of person and dative of thing; to forgive, allow; ex. *je lui ai passé sa faute*, I have forgiven him his fault. *Se passer de*, to do without. *En passer par*, to submit to; ex. *il m'en fallut passer par où il voulut*, I had to do as he chose.

Penser, with infinitive (on the point of), as, *j'ai pensé mourir*, I was at the point of death. *Penser à*, to think of. *Penser de*, to have an opinion of; ex. *que pensez-vous de cela?* what do you think of that?

Persuader, to persuade, governs the noun or pronoun directly or indirectly; ex. *persuader quelqu'un de quelque chose*, or *persuader quelque chose à quelqu'un*, to persuade some one of something.

Prendre, to take, &c.; *prendre à*, to take something from someone, to seize; ex. *il lui prit une défaillance*, a faintness seized him; *l'enrie lui prit d'y aller*, he had a desire to go; *je vous y prends*, I catch you at it; *se prendre à*, to quarrel with; *s'en prendre à*, to lay the fault on.

Prier, to beg, to pray; *prier quelqu'un de*, to ask, to invite; ex. *il m'a prié de dîner chez sa mère*, he has asked me to dine at his mother's. *De* is less ceremonious, implying an invitation given on the spot.

Répondre à, to answer, correspond to; *répondre de*, to be answerable for.

Ressentir, to feel; ex. *il a virement ressenti cette injure*, he has keenly felt this insult; *se ressentir de*, to feel the effects of.

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

152. **Adverbs** are called **SIMPLE** when they consist of one word, as *dedans*, within; **COMPOUND**, when of two or more, as *jusqu'où*, how far. The former usually stand after a simple tense: ex. *je le vois souvent*, I see him often; but several, which mark place or time, may begin as well as end a sentence:

Ex. *enfin vous voilà*, here you are at last; *je le rencontrai hier*, I met him yesterday.

In compound tenses the adverb follows the auxiliary:

Ex. *nous l'avons souvent vu*, we have often seen him;

but it must never stand, as it can in English, between the subject and the verb:

Ex. I even said, *j'ai même dit*.

Adverbial expressions, such as *par mégarde*, inadvertently; *pêle-mêle*, helter-skelter, &c., are always placed after the participle in compound tenses:

Ex. *je l'ai fait par hasard*, I did it by chance.

153. **Adverbs** cannot, like prepositions, be followed by an object, except *dedans*, within; *dehors*, outside; *dessus*, upon; *dessous*, under; which can have an object when preceded by a preposition, or put in opposition:

Ex. *il s'élança par dessus la barrière*, he sprang over the gate.

L'essuie-plume n'est ni dessus ni dessous le guéridon, the pen-wiper is neither on nor under the little table.

Ne is generally joined with some other word to form a negative phrase, such as *pas*, *point*, *plus*; *jamais*, never; *guère*, not much, &c.

It sometimes means *lest*, and is so used with the subjunctive when fear is implied :

As je craignais qu'il n'arrivât, I feared lest he might arrive ; *j'ai peur qu'il n'écrive*, I fear he may write.

Appréhender, to apprehend ; *empêcher*, to hinder ; *éviter*, to avoid ; and *trembler*, to tremble, also require it if the proposition be affirmative :

Ex. je tremble qu'il ne vous dédise, I tremble lest he contradict you.

Ne is suppressed after these verbs if the proposition be negative :

Ex. il n'empêche pas qu'on le fasse, he does not hinder its being done.

Plus, **plutôt**, rather ; **plus tôt**, sooner ; **mieux**, **moins**, **autre**, other ; **autrement**, otherwise, used with *que*, when the verb affirms something, follow the same rule :

Ex. il est plus riche que vous ne croyez, he is richer than you think ;

but if an adverbial or conjunctive expression follows, *ne* is omitted :

Ex. il est mieux portant que QUAND il était chez nous, he is better than when he was at our house.

Ne is also used after *appréhender* and *craindre*, used interrogatively, if the sentence be affirmative :

Ex. craignez-vous qu'elle ne soit renvoyée ? are you afraid that she will be dismissed ?

but if the question imply doubt of the thing asked, omit *ne* :

Ex. craignez-vous qu'on la renvoie pour une telle bagatelle ? do you fear that she will be sent away for such a trifle ?

Ne is used after *douter*, to doubt, used interrogatively or negatively, unless we speak of an indisputable fact :

Ex. doutez-vous qu'ils ne le fassent ? do you doubt that they will do it ? But, *est-ce qu'on doute que les méchants soient punis ?* does any one doubt that the wicked are punished ?

Ne is also used after *il s'en faut* with a negative, or the adverbs *beaucoup*, *peu*, *guère*, &c. :

Ex. *il s'en faut de beaucoup que je ne sois content*, I am very far from being satisfied.

Sometimes *ne* is used to imply a regret or reproach :

Ex. *que ne cédez-vous ?* why do you not yield ?

When the subjunctive is used negatively, followed by *aucun*, *guère*, *jamais*, *nullement*, *peu*, *personne*, *rien*, *ne* is required :

Ex. *il n'y a rien qui ne le froisse*, there is nothing but ruffles him ; *je ne connais personne qui ne les loue*, I know no one who does not praise them.

154. *Guère*, *much*, is one of the few German words which have taken root in French ; it comes from *weigaro*, *much*. This change of *w* into *g* is constantly found in words derived from German : *Wilhelm*, William, has become *Guillaume* ; *verras*, war, *guerre*.

Trop is also from a German root, *drupo*, too much.

Davantage means *more*, and *longer* ; it modifies verbs, but not adjectives and participles, and is generally placed at the end of a sentence :

Ex. *merci, pas davantage*, thank you, no more.

Vous avez beaucoup de livres, mais j'en ai davantage, you have many books, but I have still more.

It cannot, like *plus*, be followed by *que* or *de*, nor can it stand for a superlative, nor for a comparative accompanied by a complement. Thus we cannot say : *ils ont davantage d'instruction*, they have more learning. *Plus de* is employed.

Beaucoup, before a comparative, may be used with or without *de* :

Ex. *elle est beaucoup plus grande*, or *elle est de beaucoup plus grande*, she is taller by far.

But after a comparative it must always take *de* :

Ex. *elle est plus grande de beaucoup*.

De suite must not be confounded with *tout de suite* ; the former means *without interruption* :

Ex. *j'ai copié tous ces calculs de suite*, I have copied all these sums without stopping.

Tout de suite means *directly* :

Ex. *vas-y tout de suite*, go there directly.

Très, *very*, only stands before an adjective or adverb :

Ex. *elle chante très faux*, she sings very much out of tune ;

but **bien** precedes *nouns* :

Ex. *cet enfant a bien faim*, this child is very hungry.

155. **Rien** was a noun in Old French, derived from *res*, a thing, and had the same meaning. When *ne* was joined to it, as *je n'ai rien*, it took the meaning of *no-thing* ; gradually *rien* lost its first meaning and, even without *ne*, came to mean *nothing* :

Ex. *qu'avez-vous ? Rien*. What is the matter with you ? Nothing.

It is only in answer to a question, however, that *rien*, like *personne*, *jamais*, *aucun*, &c., can thus stand alone ; in a sentence it requires *ne* :

Ex. *je ne vois rien*, I see nothing ;

unless it reverts to its old sense of being a noun,

As, *je l'ai eu pour rien*, I had it for nothing.

Rien, like all expressions implying a negative and followed by a relative pronoun, requires the next verb in the subjunctive :

Ex. *je n'ai rien vu qu'on puisse blâmer*, I have seen nothing that one can blame.

156. The adverb *où*, *where* (Lat. *ubi*), becomes a relative pronoun when used for *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., preceded by a preposition :

Ex. *les défilés par où ils ont passé*, the gorges through which they passed.

It is often employed (instead of *quand*, which cannot be thus used) to render 'at which time :'

Ex. *le moment n'est pas loin où l'on verra*, the moment is not distant when one will see.

So may be translated by *si* before adjectives and adverbs :

Ex. *je suis si fatigué*, I am so tired.

Il parle si rapidement, he speaks so rapidly.

In colloquial English *so* often stands for *so much*, as, the day it rained so ; here *so* must be translated by *tant*.

As much as, as many as, is translated by *autant* :

Ex. *il y avait autant d'hommes que de femmes*, there were as many men as women.

Ainsi, meaning 'thus,' 'in such a way :'

Ex. *ainsi soit-il*, thus let it be.

Aussi, accordingly.

157. **Alors, donc, puis**, may all be translated by *then*, but they cannot be used indifferently.

Alors represents *then* in such phrases as *alors, vous viendrez* ? then you will come ? or, *il me dit alors*, he then told me ; and constantly after an infinitive : ex. *que pouvais-je dire alors* ? what then could I say ?

Donc may mark the conclusion of an argument, and mean *consequently* : ex. *il rougit, donc il est coupable*, he colours, consequently he is guilty ; or simply mean 'accordingly.' It often marks doubt or wonder, or lends emphasis, as *vous pensez donc qu'il ne viendra pas* ? then you think that he will not come ? *qu'ai-je donc fait* ? what then have I done ?

Puis means 'after something else has been done :' ex. *d'abord je lis, puis j'écris*, first I read, then I write.

How in a question is translated by *comment* :

Ex. *comment cela se fait-il* ? how is that done ? and is used as an exclamation ; ex. *comment donc* ! what then !

But in exclamatory sentences **comme** is more often used, as, *voilà comment elle se conduit*, you see how she behaves.

If it were merely an assertion *comment* would be correct :
 ex. *vous voyez comment je l'ai fait*, you see how I have done it.

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

158. **Durant** is an exception to the rule that prepositions must precede the noun to which they relate ; it is equally correct to say, *durant sa vie*, during his life, or, *sa vie durant*.

Avant refers to time : ex. *avant dix mois*, ere ten months ; **devant** to place : ex. *devant la barrière*, before the gate.

Au travers takes *de* ; **à travers** never does :

Ex. *à travers la forêt* ; *au travers de la forêt*, through the forest.

À travers may also be translated 'across,' while *de travers* means 'crooked :'

Ex. *votre chapeau est de travers*, your hat is crooked.

Auprès de implies not only being near some one, which *près de* also does, but the constant presence of one person near another :

Ex. *elle est auprès de son amie malade*, she is with her sick friend.

It also means *compared with* :

Ex. *vos malheurs ne sont rien auprès des miens*, your misfortunes are nothing compared with mine.

159. **Dans** and **en** present some difficulties. **Dans** has a more determinate sense than **en**, and is used before the article, and the demonstrative and possessive pronouns :

Ex. *dans la maison*, in the house ; *dans cette bataille*, in this battle ; *travaillez dans votre chambre*, work in your room.

En serves in vaguer phrases, as *en temps de paix*, in time of peace ; *cette ouvrière travaille en chambre*, this workwoman works at home, literally, in the room. **Dans la chambre** would mean some special room.

En comes before names of months and dates : ex. *en mai*,

in *May*; *en* 1880; unless a noun such as *mois*, month, or *siècle*, century, is used :

Ex. au mois de mai, in the month of May.

Au dix-neuvième siècle, in the nineteenth century.

En precedes the names of seasons, spring excepted :

Ex. en hiver, in winter; but *au printemps*, in spring.

To denote a period of time *dans* is used :

Ex. ils partiront dans trois semaines, they will start in three weeks.

Dans expresses the length of time which will pass before an action takes place, and *en* the time spent in doing it. It is therefore correct to say : *je vais à Paris en deux jours*, or *dans deux jours*, but the sense is entirely different. *En* expresses duration : *ex. vous le ferez en deux jours*, you will do it in two days, that is, will take two days to do it.

When countries are spoken of without an article *in* is rendered by *en* : *ex. en France*. *Dans*, applied to a town, means within its precincts. It is in this sense that Napoleon wrote : *je suis dans Moscou*, I am in Moscow.

En is used in many adverbial locutions : *ex. en colère*, angry; *en aristocrate*, like an aristocrat; and it appears in such expressions as *en deuil*, in mourning; *en grande toilette*, in full dress; and after verbs of changing and dividing, as *partager en deux*, to divide in two. It has the meaning of *of* when the material of which something consists is spoken of : *ex. une cafetière en argent*, a silver coffee-pot; but *de* is more commonly used : *ex. une robe de soie*, a silk dress.

160. *Depuis*, *since*, must not be confounded with *puisque*, which is a conjunction, and means *because*, while *depuis* is a preposition, meaning 'from a set time until now :'

Ex. il est arrivé bien des malheurs depuis que nous sommes dans ce pays, many misfortunes have happened since we have been in this country.

Envers, *towards*, means *with regard to* :

Ex. ses bontés envers ses amis, his kindness towards his friends.

Vers expresses time and place :

Ex. *vers le soir*, towards evening; *vers l'église*, towards the church.

Entre can only be used when *two* things or persons are spoken of :

Ex. *entre lui et moi*, between him and me.

Parmi requires a plural or collective noun :

Ex. *parmi ses parents*, among his relations; *parmi la foule*, among the crowd.

Par, *by*, never means nearness, as *by* can : ex. *by the gate*. It is used when the instrument of an action is spoken of :

Ex. *par ce moyen*, by this means;

and idiomatically with certain verbs :

Ex. *aller par le jardin*, to go through the garden; *divisé par chapitres*, divided into chapters; and appears in many idioms, as *trois fois par semaine*, three times a week; *ne sortez pas par ce temps affreux*, do not go out in this bad weather; *de par le monde*, in the wide world; *de par la loi*, by order of the law.

Although it follows passive verbs, if a bodily or mental action be spoken of, as *il est puni par son maître*, he is punished by his master, passive verbs of esteem, love, &c. govern *de* in preference to *par* :

Ex. *ils sont aimés de tout le monde*, they are loved by all.

161. When *to* means *in order to*, *pour* renders it :

Ex. *je serai tout pour vous obliger*, I will do everything to oblige you.

It also represents *for* :

Ex. *c'est pour vous*, it is for you;

but is omitted in sentences when time is alluded to :

Ex. *restez un moment*, stay a moment.

When time is spoken of in negative phrases, *de* replaces *pour* :

Ex. *ils ne se sont pas rencontrés de six mois*, they have not met for six months.

However, when *for* marks the end of some future period it is expressed by *pour* :

As je m'en vais pour une quinzaine, I am going away for a fortnight.

Ils ont du travail pour un mois, they have work for a month.

162. **Près de** with an infinitive means *on the point of* :

Ex. *près de pleurer*, ready to cry ;

while *prêt à* means ready to :

Ex. *prêt à se coucher*, ready to go to bed.

Idioms with **sous**, *under*, are : *sous le règne de*, in the reign of ; *sous peu*, shortly ; *passer quelque chose sous silence*, to overlook something voluntarily.

Sur, *on*, sometimes expresses the total from which a number is taken :

Ex. *sur six élèves*, out of six pupils.

Voici precedes an enumeration, as

*'Voici deux médecins qui ne nous trompent pas :
Gaîté, doux exercice, et modeste repas,'*

here are two doctors who do not deceive us : gaiety, gentle exercise, and moderate eating.

Voilà alludes to something already said :

Ex. *ignorer et souffrir, voilà le sort des hommes*, to know little and to suffer, this is the lot of man.

But, in familiar style, *voici* and *voilà* are often used one for the other.

163. **Prepositions govern the disjunctive form of personal pronouns** : ex. *sans lui, avec moi, pour eux*, except *voici* and *voilà*, which require the accusative of the personal pronoun to precede them :

Ex. *vous voilà !* here you are !

Le voilà arrivé ! here he is, arrived !

With reference to persons they take the relative *qui* ; with reference to things, *lequel*, &c., or *quoi*, with or without an antecedent :

Ex. *celle à qui je pense*, her of whom I think.

La difficulté à laquelle je pense, the difficulty of which I am thinking.

À quoi risez-vous ? at what do you aim ?

Ce à quoi je pense, that which I am thinking about.

À, *to, belonging to.*

164. When *à* is used between two nouns, the last tells the purpose or object to which the first is applied, or some characteristic in it :

Ex. un panier à pain, a bread-basket.

It is not possible to give a precise rule as to when the preposition is used alone, and when in combination with the article, as *le marché au blé*, the corn market. This combination often answers to the Latin accusative of respect :

Ex. crines effusa sacerdos.

L'homme au manteau, the man with the mantle.

La fille aux yeux bleus, the girl with blue eyes.

A corresponds to *to, at, in*, before names of towns and places,

As *à Caen*, at Caen.

Il est à Londres, he is in London.

And, if the name of a country takes an article, *à* is used instead of *en* :

Ex. est-il en Amérique ou au Brésil ? is he in America or in Brazil ?

À represents the Latin *ad*, and therefore has the power of denoting motion to a place, destination, and rest in some given spot :

As *à la maison*, at home, in the house.

À la main, in the hand.

Il a une cravache à la main, he has a whip in his hand.

It also means *at the distance of* :

Ex. à dix mois d'ici, ten months from this time.

With *être*, *à* expresses possession :

Ex. à qui est cette bobine ? whose is this cotton reel ? or, to whom does this cotton reel belong ?

À moi, it is mine.

C'est à moi, c'est à vous, &c.

It also implies rotation or order :

Ex. *c'est à vous à donner*, it is your turn to deal.

C'est à with **de** has a slightly different meaning :

Ex. *c'est à eux de le faire*, it is their right, or duty, to do it.

DE, of, from.

165. *De* is used in a great variety of ways, as it represents the Latin genitive and the ablative with *de*. Its original meaning was *down from*, thence it came to express origin, time, and place, and marked possession :

Je viens de Saumur, I come from Saumur.

Le chemin de Rouergue, the road to Rouergue.

Je viens de le faire, I have just done it ; literally, I come from doing it.

Les outils de Bernard, Bernard's tools.

It also conveys the idea of duty or right :

Ex. *c'est à lui de demander pardon*, it is for him to ask pardon.

It comes between *que*, what ; *quelqu'un*, some one ; *quelque chose*, something ; *personne*, nobody ; *rien*, nothing, and an adjective or participle following, as well as after a number when it precedes an adjective or participle :

Ex. *qu'y a-t-il d'étonnant* ? what is there surprising ?

Il n'annonce rien de bon, it foretels nothing good.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un de trop ici ? is there one too many here ?

Voilà un cerf-volant de perdu, here is a kite lost.

It is also used idiomatically in questions of comparison :

Ex. *lequel est le plus célèbre, de Racine ou de Corneille* ? which is the most celebrated, Racine or Corneille ?

When an infinitive is preceded by *de*, it must often be translated by a present participle,

As *il se fait fort de réussir*, he answers for succeeding.

The use of *de* before a noun, when a negative is implied, should be noticed :

Ex. *il partira sans faire de mal*, he will go away without doing any harm.

When there is no negative, the partitive article is correct :

Ex. *il a fait du mal*, he has done harm.

De may often be translated *as to* :

Ex. *je me suis trompé de livre*, I have taken the wrong book ; literally, I have deceived myself as to the book.

Bien fait de sa personne, well made ; literally, well made as to his person.

When a cardinal number follows *moins* and *plus*, *than* is rendered by *de* :

Ex. *moins de deux mois*, less than two months.

Il y a plus de cent ans de cela, it is more than a hundred years since that happened.

De expresses measure,

As, *plus grande de toute la tête*, a whole head taller.

Six pieds de large sur huit de long, six feet wide and eight long.

Agé de deux ans, two years old.

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

166. Four conjunctions, *de sorte que*, *en sorte que*, *tellement que*, *de manière que*, which all mean *so that*, *in such a way as*, govern the indicative mood when there is no doubt implied, and the subjunctive when there is :

Ex. *il travaille tellement qu'il se rend malade*, he works so hard that he makes himself ill.

Agissez de sorte que vous vous fassiez aimer, act so that you may be loved.

Si governs the imperfect whenever the sense admits of it, but if *que* be used to avoid repeating it, the subjunctive follows :

Ex. *s'il venait, et que je ne fusse pas à la maison*, if he were to come, and I should not be at home.

Si elle vous écrit, et que vous soyez mécontent d'elle, if she writes to you, and you are not satisfied with her.

167. The following conjunctions govern the past definite perfect :

<i>Aussitôt que</i>	} as soon as.	<i>Lorsque</i>	} when.
<i>Sitôt que</i>		<i>Quand</i>	
<i>Dès que</i>		<i>Pas plutôt</i> , no sooner.	
<i>À peine</i> , scarcely.			

This tense is hardly ever used except after one of these conjunctions :

Ex. aussitôt que j'eusse fini mon dessin je le leur donnai, as soon as I had finished my drawing I gave it to them.

À peine fut-il parti qu'on le rappela, scarcely was he gone when he was recalled.

Quand also governs a future :

Ex. quand j'irai, when I go ; *quand j'aurai ce livre*, when I have that book.

It would be a grave fault to use the present tense when something yet to happen is spoken of.

Quand may often be translated *even if* :

Ex. je l'aimerais quand même il serait ingrat, I would love him even if he should be ungrateful.

Je partirai quand même . . ., I shall go even if . . . , *i.e.* in any case.

Ni answers to *neither* :

Ex. il ne parle ni ne mange, he neither speaks nor eats.

Ni . . . ni answers to *neither and nor* :

Ex. ce n'est ni beau ni laid, it is neither pretty nor ugly.

It also unites two negative propositions,

As, les rois ne peuvent se perdre ni se sauver tout seuls, kings can neither ruin nor save themselves alone.

168. After *défendre*, to forbid, and *empêcher*, to hinder, *ni* is sometimes used where in English either, *ou*, may be found :

Ex. ils ne peuvent vous recevoir ni à la ville ni à la campagne,
you either in town or in the country.

In French two negatives may be used with *ni*, contrary to the usual rule, as above.

Ou cannot be used to couple two parts of a sentence, unless both are affirmative.

Et is much less used in French composition than in English. When it would be mere mannerism to omit it in English, it is very properly left out in French, and life and picturesqueness are gained by the omission :

Ex. *la poussière, l'écume, les nuages que le vent roulait*, the dust the foam, the clouds which the wind was driving.

INTERJECTIONS.

169. THESE words are in French, as in all languages, sounds which express a sudden emotion, as *ah ! hélas !*

O is much less used in French than in English ; when it marks a vocative it requires a circumflex :

As, *ô César !* O *César !*

Toi, not *tu*, is used after an interjection :

Ex. *ô toi qui me protèges !* O thou who protectest me !

Hélas used to be written *hé las*, and is a compound of the exclamation *he !* and *las* (*lassus*, unhappy). *Las* is one of those words which has lost its original force, and now only means *weary* :

Ex. *des paupières lassées sur des yeux lassés*, tired eyelids upon tired eyes.

The untranslatable *dame* is a contraction of *Domine Deus*, Lord God, but has now lost all meaning. Perhaps it answers best to *well !* sometimes to *well, why not ?* It belongs to those interjections such as *lut*, hush ; *soit*, be it so ; *allons*, come on, which are formed from nouns or verbs.

NOTES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

170. THE subjunctive in French has hardly anything in common with the same mood in English. It is used after certain verbs, conjunctions, and locutions, but *que*, unless standing for *afin que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *sans que*, *pour que*, etc., or used to avoid repeating *si*, does not govern it :

Ex. *j'espère qu'il viendra.*

If we find it governing this mood in *attendez qu'il revienne*, and similar phrases, it is because *que* here stands for *jusqu'à ce que* (§ 65).

171. The subjunctive is governed—

(a) by the following conjunctions :—

Afin que, in order that.

À moins que, unless.

Au cas que, if.

Avant que, before.

Bien que, though.

De crainte que, for fear, lest.

De peur que, lest.

En cas que, in case, if.

Encore que, though.

Jusqu'à ce que, till, until.

Loin que, far from.

Non que, } not that.

Non pas que, }

Nonobstant que, for all that, notwithstanding that.

Posé que, suppose that.

Pour que, that, in order that.

Pour peu que, if ever so little, how little soever.

Pourvu que, provided, save that.

Quoique, though.

Sans que, without.

Si peu que, however little.

Soit que, whether.

Supposé que, suppose that.

(b) by the following impersonal locutions :—

Attendre, to expect.

Avoir peur, to be afraid.

Commander, to command.

Consentir, to consent.

Craindre, to fear.

Défendre, to forbid.

Désapprouver, to disapprove.

Désiner, to design.

Douter, to doubt.

Empêcher, to hinder.

Être au désespoir, to despair.

Exiger, to exact.

Mériter, to merit.

Préférer, to prefer.

Prendre garde, to take care.

Prier, to pray.

Regretter, to regret.

S'étonner, to wonder.

Se plaindre, to complain.

Se réjouir, to rejoice.

Souffrir, to suffer.

Souhaiter, to wish.

Supposer, to suppose.

Trembler, to tremble.

Trouver bon, to approve.

Vouloir, to be willing.

Observe, however, that verbs expressing the intellectual faculties govern the indicative when used affirmatively, and the subjunctive when negatively or interrogatively.

Ex. *je crois qu'il viendra*, I think he will come; but, *croyez-vous qu'il vienne? je ne crois pas que cela soit possible*. Do you think he will come? I do not believe that is possible.

In the first case the thing is stated as a fact to be positively expected; in the second as uncertain.

(c) by verbs expressing doubt, command, fear, or any affection of the mind:

Ex. *tous les Grecs demandent qu'il périsse*, all the Greeks demand that he shall perish.

J'aimerais mieux encore qu'il déclînât son nom, I should like yet better that he stated his name.

Such verbs are:—

Aimer, to love, or like.

Approuver, to approve.

Appréhender, to apprehend.

Nier, to deny.

Ordonner, to order.

Permettre, to permit.

172. *If we ask a question as a form of stating a fact the indicative is used:*

Ex. *vous ai-je dit que mon roman est publié?* have I told you that my novel is published?

Again, if an impersonal verb has an adjective denoting certainty, or even probability, it governs the next verb in the indicative, unless used negatively or interrogatively:

Ex. *il est probable qu'il part*, it is probable that he will go away; but, *est-il probable qu'il parte?* is it probable he will go away?

The following examples will render this clear:

Je pense qu'il l'a fait, I think he has done it.

Pensez-vous qu'il l'ait fait? do you think he has done it?

Il est vrai qu'il en est capable, it is true, he is capable of it.

S'il était vrai qu'il en fût capable, if it were true, he was capable of it.

Savoir, however, governs an indicative: *je ne sais s'il le fera*, I do not know if he will do it.

173. *Verbs expressing fear, as CRAINDRE, AVOIR PEUR, TREMBLER, GARDER, govern the subjunctive with NE when used affirmatively (§ 153), while DOUTER and NIER take it with a negative :*

Ex. *je ne nie pas que son frère ne l'ait fait*, I do not deny that his brother has done it.

The subjunctive is also used with an adjective or participle preceded by ÊTRE, PARAÎTRE, and SEMBLER :

Ex. *je suis fâché que votre mère soit partie*, I am sorry that your mother is gone.

Nous sommes bien aises que vous soyez venu, we are very glad that you are come.

174. *If the infinitive can be used instead of the subjunctive, it is better to do so, especially if the cumbrous past imperfect can be avoided :*

Ex. *il est venu pour vous voir*, he came to see you ; not, *il est venu pour qu'il vous voie*.

Il faut que,
Il est nécessaire que, } it is necessary that.

Il est extraordinaire que, it is extraordinary that.

Il est fâcheux que, it is sad that.

Il est juste que, it is right that.

Il est injuste que, it is wrong that.

Il est à propos que, it is proper that.

Il est surprenant que, it is surprising that.

Il convient que, it is becoming that.

Il est temps que, it is time that.

Il importe, or il est important que, it is important, or, it matters that.

Il suffit que, it is sufficient that.

Il est à désirer que,
Il est à souhaiter que, } it is to be wished that.

Il semble que, it seems that.

Il est possible que it is possible that.

Il vaut mieux que it is better that.

PUNCTUATION.

175. Punctuation teaches us to separate the different parts of a sentence by certain signs, and shows the pauses which should be made in reading.

The signs are the *comma*, virgule; *semi-colon*, point-virgule; *colon*, deux points; *full stop*, point; *note of interrogation*, point interrogatif; and *note of admiration*, point exclamatif.

The *comma* is used—

a. When a person or object is addressed :

Ex. *Hélène, voici ton livre*, Helen, here is your book.

b. When a parenthesis is introduced, or a relative clause used :

Ex. *il leva, sans parler, les yeux vers le balcon*, he raised, without speaking, his eyes towards the balcony.

The main idea would be unchanged if we said : *il leva les yeux vers le balcon*.

It would be a grave fault in English composition to punctuate thus : *l'homme qui est insensible à ces malheurs, est un egoïste*, the man who is insensible to these misfortunes, is a selfish man ; but it is correct in French.

c. To separate nouns or adjectives, when they follow one another :

Ex. *ce garçon est doux, patient, laborieux*, this boy is gentle, patient, hard-working.

In English the conjunction *et*, and, would be used before the last of such a series of adjectives as these, but in French it is generally avoided.

If two parts of a proposition are joined by *et*, and; *ou*, or; *ni*, nor, in a short sentence, no comma is used :

Ex. *je dessinerai ou j'écrirai*, I shall draw or I shall write.

But it must be used in such a sentence as this : *j'irai en France, ou peut-être encore plus loin*, I shall go to France, or perhaps even still farther ; because breath would fail did we read it without a pause.

d. When a verb is understood :

Ex. *Jean cueille des cerises, Marie, des fraises*, John gathers cherries, Mary, strawberries.

Here *cueille* is replaced by the comma.

176. The semicolon is employed to divide sentences when a new clause is introduced, referring to the preceding one :

Ex. *Elle doit épouser, non pas vous, non pas moi ;
Mais de vous, ou de moi, quiconque sera roi.*

Corneille

She must marry, not you or me,
But the one of us who will be king.

177. The colon is little used in English, but is found in French—

a. After the proposition introducing a quotation.

b. After a general proposition, preceded or followed by details :

Ex. *tout plaît dans cet auteur : la justice des pensées, la finesse des remarques, la profondeur de la critique*, all is pleasing in this author, the justice of his thoughts, the keenness of his remarks, the depth of his criticism.

Le travail, l'air pur, et les amusements simples : voilà mon remède.

c. Before a proposition explaining what has gone before :

Ex. *elle s'appuyait au bras de sa sœur : je crois qu'elle pleurait en parlant*, she was leaning on her sister's arm ; I think she was crying as she spoke.

178. The full stop is used when a sentence is complete.

The note of interrogation marks a question ; and the note of admiration, an expression of emotion.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION.

Nouns whose plural is in x.

Qui de nous, étant jeunes, n'a pas porté envie aux peaux-rouges ; c'est à dire aux peaux-rouges des romans de Cooper ? Là on les voit nu-tête les chapeaux n'étant pas à la mode parmi eux, les cheveux

au vent, galopant par monts et par vaux sur des chevaux *fourgueux* comme leurs cavaliers. Ils chassent, non pas des oiseaux ou du gibier menu, comme par exemple des perdreaux et des tourteraux, mais des ours et des buffles. Ce ne sont pas les ruisseaux ni même les fleuves qui les arrêteront ; ils se jouent du danger. Le soir ils s'endorment auprès des feux qu'ils allument pour effrayer les bêtes sauvages. Ils se roulent dans leurs manteaux, ayant près d'eux leurs longs couteaux, prêts à se défendre à la moindre alerte ; le vent soupire parmi les branches des arbres qui les abritent ; les étoiles scintillent au ciel ; ils sont libres, sans souci, loin des professeurs. Quel collégien ne soupire pas après une telle existence ?

Indefinite and Possessive Adjectives.

Chaque pays, suivant le terrain dont il est formé, a ses productions spéciales. Telle contrée, recouverte d'une épaisse couche d'humus, est célèbre par ses pâturages, ses bestiaux ; ainsi la Normandie, la Touraine, le Berry sont renommés pour leurs bœufs, leurs chevaux, leurs moutons ; telle autre, par son terrain sec et d'une nature particulière, mérite une autre mention : la Champagne, pour sa craie et ses vins ; Fontainebleau, pour ses grès, avec lesquels on pave les rues de Paris ; le Jura, les Pyrénées, les Alpes, les Cévennes, pour leurs marbres aux mille veines de couleurs diverses, pour leurs granits qui servent à faire les trottoirs de nos rues. Les nations étrangères nos voisines nous envoient, en échange de ces produits nationaux, mainte substance qui nous manque : la Suède, ses cuivres ; l'Angleterre, ses excellents aciers ; l'Espagne, ses fruits ; l'Afrique, son ivoire, ses grains superbes.—*Guide Pratique, Yon.**

Qualificative Adjectives.

Vous lisez donc *Ivanhoe* ? C'est un beau livre. Le début me plaît extrêmement. Gurth et Wamba dans cette clairière au milieu d'une grande forêt de vieux chênes, le jour qui tombe, et les troncs des grands arbres rougis par les derniers rayons du soleil, et toute cette scène qui rappelle la vieille histoire d'Angleterre en présence de la nature qui ne change point. J'ai toujours beaucoup aimé le contraste frappant de ces mœurs qui passe, de cette vie agitée des hommes tout concentrés dans leurs intérêts du moment, avec la beauté immobile et éternelle de la terre sur laquelle ils passent.

X. Dondan.

* The extracts from the 'Guide Pratique' are used by permission of the author, Mme. Yon, and the publisher, M. Hachette.

Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.

Ma tâche sera bientôt achevée, finis donc la tienne. C'est déjà fait ; je n'ai plus rien à écrire ; voici la mienne et celle de Charles mise au net, j'ai tout copié. Mon devoir n'est pas tout à fait fini ; attends-moi un instant. Non, je ne le veux pas ; Anne et toi, vous ne faites que jouer, chacun à son goût ; moi, j'aime à travailler. Qui a dit cela ? toi, Justin ? Tu dois te rappeler que ces enfants sont plus jeunes que toi ; tu viens à l'école depuis trois ans, néanmoins leurs devoirs sont tout aussi difficiles que les tiens ou que ceux de Charles. Montre-moi ton cahier et tes livres ; regarde un peu ce grand pâté, ces pattes de mouche ! Quels bâtons ! quels déliés ! Celui qui les a faits ne doit pas en être trop fier. Tu te conduis mal avec tes camarades, car au lieu de leur donner un bon exemple, tu les empêches de travailler en les taquinant. Ne te loue donc pas trop haut. Ceux qui font bien méritent des louanges, mais quand ils se les donnent eux-mêmes, personne n'a plus envie de leur en faire d'autres.

The pupil should name the different kinds of Pronouns used.

Indefinite Adjectives.

Les quatre fils de Clovis se partagèrent ses États de telle façon que leur brutalité y trouva maints prétextes à toutes les attaques qu'ils se firent mutuellement. Après toutefois qu'ils eurent ajouté à leurs possessions toute la Bourgogne, en vengeant sur les cousins de Clotilde plusieurs offenses que cette vindictive personne avait reçues de son oncle, Clotaire resta seul roi, grâce à tous les crimes par lesquels il s'était débarrassé de chaque chef qui le gênait, et jouit quelques années de sa puissance, que sa mort laissa aussi à quatre fils. Deux d'entre eux renouvelèrent, en la rendant plus criminelle encore, la lutte des fils de Clovis. Deux reines, Frédégonde et Brunehaut, ont attaché leur nom à cette lutte, qu'elles soutinrent jusqu'à la fin, malgré la mort de chacun des rois ennemis, en commettant tous les crimes.—*Guide Pratique, Yon.*

The pupil should name the Indefinite Adjectives used.

On various Tenses of Verbs.

I.

Vous me demandez, chère petite, s'il n'y aurait pas quelque chose de plus amusante que l'histoire ? Je crois bien que oui, mais il faut

s'entendre. Pour l'imagination, sans doute, prise à elle toute seule. Elle trouve, et elle a raison, que tout n'est pas bien dans ce monde-ci. Les caractères n'ont jamais la perfection qu'on y voudrait. Les événements ne marchent pas assez vite. Ils se traînent par mille détours avant d'arriver au dénouement. Napoléon n'est pas le conquérant comme on voudrait se le représenter; il serait peut-être possible d'ajouter quelque chose aux perfections de la petite Paule. C'est que, vous et Napoléon, vous êtes de l'histoire, de la *réalité*, comme nous disons; alors, l'imagination refait tout cela: elle corrige—elle fait Paule plus exacte à écrire, par exemple. Napoléon ne fait pas fusiller le duc d'Enghien; alors, c'est du roman. Tout s'agrandit, tout s'embellit s'il est possible. Pardon, mais savez-vous l'inconvénient! C'est qu'à force d'embellir, d'agrandir, on fait des êtres qui ne tiendraient pas sur leurs pieds si vous essayiez de les faire marcher; charmants, mais non vivants.—X. *Dondan*.

II.

Ma sœur est arrivée aujourd'hui de Lyon; c'est la douceur angélique et la vertu surnaturelle sans effort. Elle m'a parlé de mon Alfonse; ses maîtres en disent de bonnes choses. Dieu le bénisse, comme je le bénis du cœur! Je commence demain mes leçons à mes petites filles; il m'y faudra bien de l'assiduité et de la patience. On est venu me dire après le dîner qu'un pauvre vieillard abandonné dont je prenais soin, dans une hutte de la montagne où il n'avait pour compagnie que sa chèvre, venait de mourir. Cela m'a fait beaucoup de peine, parce que je me suis reproché d'avoir négligé d'aller le visiter si loin dans les derniers jours. Il est vrai que je le croyais guéri, cependant je n'aurais pas dû m'en fier à une amélioration à cet âge; j'aurais dû m'en occuper davantage. J'en ai un remords sur le cœur. En tout je ne mets pas assez de suite dans le peu de bien que je fais: je me laisse trop facilement entraîner à des distractions qui ne sont pas des fautes, mais qui sont des faiblesses, et qui nuisent à un saint emploi du temps. Pourquoi ce temps nous a-t-il été donné? N'est-ce pas pour qu'il rapporte tous les jours, toutes les heures, quelque chose à Dieu, aux autres et à nous.

Madame de Lamartine.

III.

Avez-vous lu quelque fois des pages des *Martyrs* de M. de Chateaubriand? La rencontre d'Eudore et de Cymodocée mérite bien que vous la lisiez. Aimez-vous à relire ce que vous avez déjà lu? J'aime assez qu'on relise. On s'étonne des différences d'une année à une autre. Il y a des choses qu'on comprend subitement,

sans y avoir songé auparavant. J'ai éprouvé beaucoup cela autrefois en relisant le Télémaque. On se rappelle son ancienne impression, et on en éprouve une autre. L'esprit a grandi, et il se souvient d'avoir été petit, ou plutôt, au moyen de la mémoire, il se sent petit et grand tout à la fois. Il y a quelque chose de plus singulier que cela : on a lu un livre, on a tout oublié, tout ; on a seulement gardé l'impression qu'il était bon ou mauvais, et puis, tout à coup, on change d'avis, on trouve qu'on a mal jugé ; on relit le livre, on trouve que le second jugement est juste. C'est un merveilleux travail que l'intelligence de l'homme. Quand vous regarderez de près, vous trouverez que c'est mille fois plus étonnant encore que le spectacle de la nature et toutes les merveilles de l'histoire naturelle. Il y a dans la Bible, 'les cieux racontent la gloire de Dieu.' Il est encore plus étonnant d'avoir fait l'esprit de l'homme que l'armée des étoiles. Bon jour, ma petite chère Paule, ne prenez pas sur vos jeux pour me répondre.—X. Doudan.

The pupil should indicate the Verbs and Tenses in the above passages.

IV.

Au moment où j'allais écrire la conclusion de *L'Oiseau*, Toussnel m'apporta un rossignol.

Ce fut un événement de famille, et nous établîmes le pauvre artiste prisonnier dans une embrasure de fenêtre, mais enveloppé d'un rideau, de sorte que, tout à la fois seul et en société, il s'habituaît tout doucement à ses nouveaux hôtes. Nul autre oiseau se trouva dans ce salon. Malheureusement mon rouge-gorge familier, qui vole libre dans mon cabinet, pénétra dans cette pièce. On s'en inquiéta d'autant moins qu'il voit toute la journée, sans s'en émouvoir, d'autres oiseaux — serins, bouvreuils, chardonnerets, mais la vue du rossignol le jeta dans un incroyable accès de fureur. Il fonda sur la cage, du bec et des griffes ; il eût voulu l'assassiner. Cependant le rossignol poussait des cris de terreur ; d'une voix lamentable et rauque il appelait au secours. L'autre, arrêté par les barreaux, mais fixé tout près sur le cadre d'un tableau, grinçait, sifflait, en le perçant de son regard. Son invasion, que nous oubliâmes bientôt, n'était pas oubliée, ce semble, de sa craintive victime. Le malheureux rossignol voletait toujours d'un air d'effroi, et rien ne le rassurait. Deux ou trois jours se passèrent dans une violente agitation et une abstinence de désespoir. J'étais triste et plein de remords. Moi, ami de la liberté, j'avais pourtant un prisonnier, un prisonnier inconsolable ! Nous ne serions pas sortis aisément de cet état si le

chant n'était venu à notre secours. Un chant doux, peu varié, chanté à distance, parut le prendre et le gagner. Quand seulement on le regardait, il écoutait moins, s'agitait ; mais quand on ne le regardait pas, il venait au bord de la cage, tendait son long cou de biche, d'un charmant gris de souris, dressait par instants la tête, le corps restant immobile, avec un œil vif, curieux. Je me hasardai hier d'approcher de lui, et il ne s'agita pas : il ne parut pas troublé, il attendit paisiblement, avec un œil plein de douceur. Je vis que la paix était faite, et que j'étais accepté.—*Michelet*.

The pupil should explain the different shades of meaning given by the use of the past imperfect and past definite imperfect in this passage.

V.

Burning of Moscow in 1812.

Une seule rue, étroite, tortueuse et toute brûlante, s'offrait plutôt comme l'entrée que comme la sortie de cet enfer. Napoléon s'élança à pied et sans hésiter dans ce dangereux passage. Il s'avança au travers du pétilllement de ces brasiers, au bruit des craquements des voûtes, et de la chute des poutres brûlantes et des toits de fer ardents, qui croulaient autour de lui. Ces débris embarrassaient ses pas. Les flammes, qui dévoraient avec un bruissement impétueux les édifices entre lesquels il marchait, dépassant leur faite, fléchissaient sous le vent et se recourbaient sur nos têtes. Nous marchions sur une terre de feu, sous un ciel de feu, entre deux murailles de feu. Une chaleur pénétrante brûlait nos yeux, qu'il fallait cependant tenir ouverts et fixés sur le danger. Un air dévorant des cendres étincillantes embrasait notre respiration, courte, sèche, haletante, et déjà suffoquée par la fumée. Nos mains brûlaient en cherchant à garantir notre figure d'une chaleur insupportable, et en repoussant les flammèches qui couvraient à chaque instant et pénétraient nos vêtements.—*Séguir*.

Remark on the use of the past imperfect and past definite, and class the various verbs under their conjugations.

VI.

Espérez-vous qu'il vienne ? Je n'espère pas que vous me défendiez si l'on m'attaque. Je ne crois pas qu'ils soient mieux portants. Je crois que vous avez raison.* Ma sœur espère que vous vous amuserez

* *Espérer* only governs the subjunctive when used interrogatively or negatively. *Croire* follows the same rule.

chez sa cousine. * Oubliez-vous donc qu'elle est malade ? Que voulez-vous que je fasse pendant votre absence ? Je désire que vous fassiez attention à vos études ; je crains que vous ne les négligiez quand je ne serai plus là pour les surveiller. Doutez-vous donc que je vous obéisse ? Je souhaite que vous vous rappeliez mes conseils, et je regrette que jusqu'à présent ils vous ont si peu profité. Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas reçu ma lettre. Il est juste que les coupables soient punis. Est-il sûr qu'ils aient tort ? Lisez des ouvrages qui puissent former votre goût. †

VII.

Rentrons avant qu'il fasse nuit. Je ne sortirai d'ici que je ne sois payé. Son esprit est toujours actif, quoiqu'il soit malade et qu'il ne puisse plus écrire. Attendez qu'il revienne. Je n'ai rien vu qu'on puisse blâmer dans sa conduite. Il est le seul qui puisse le faire. Je consens que vous alliez le voir. Il n'est point certain qu'il se soit blessé. Amusez-vous, pourvu que vous soyez de retour à neuf heures. Votre père est le meilleur professeur que je connaisse. Voudriez-vous que je jettasse un coup d'œil sur ces papiers ? Il faut que vous ayez la bonté de les examiner. Il suffit que je sache cela. Si quelqu'un venait et que je ne fusse pas à la maison, envoyez-moi chercher. Quelque patience que nous ayons, nous n'en aurons jamais assez. Quel que fût le bonheur qu'il ait eu, j'étais plus heureux que lui. De qui que ce soit que vous parliez, évitez la médisance. Je ne connais personne qui soit aussi bon que lui, Je viens pour vous ‡ voir. Il ne croit pas pouvoir sortir demain.

Compound Tenses.

Les orages qu'il y a eu, et qui ont été causés par les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait, ont ravagé tout le pays. Que de maux il en est déjà résulté ! Que de feuilles d'arbres il a fallu pour couvrir ainsi les chemins ! La perte de la bataille est attribuée au peu d'habileté qu'a montré le général. Le peu de mots que vous lui avez adressés ont suffi pour le consoler. Les maux qu'elle a soufferts sont incroyables. Les années qu'elle a souffert ont été bien longues.

* An interrogative verb does not govern the subjunctive when the fact stated admits of no doubt.

† The reason for the use of the subjunctive in all the above sentences should be explained by the pupil.

‡ When the construction admits of the infinitive, use it rather than the subjunctive.

Christine n'a régné que huit ans, mais le peu d'années qu'elle a passées sur le trône ont suffi pour lui acquérir presque autant de gloire que son père s'en était procuré dans les combats. La procession a passé sous mes fenêtres. Nos soldats ont triomphé hier ; ils auraient vaincu aujourd'hui. Ce ne sont pas des maximes que j'ai voulu écrire. Voilà les orphelins que j'ai gardés chez moi ; la responsabilité était plus sérieuse que je ne l'avais pensé. Oui, j'ai bien regretté les embarras que j'ai su que vous aviez. Cette dame s'est proposée pour vous peindre. Je ne savais pas qu'elle s'est proposé de me peindre. Nous ne nous sommes jamais parlé. Elle s'est laissé tromper. Ces acteurs que j'ai vu jouer, je les ai entendu applaudir.

Great pains should be taken to make the pupil explain the reason for the singular or plural in all these participles.

Participles, present and past.

J'ai vu les vents grondant sur ces moissons superbes. Les natures aimant la solitude aiment généralement l'étude. Ces hommes, prévoyant le danger, se mirent sur leur garde. Les grands pins, gémissant sous les coups des haches, tombent en roulant du haut de la montagne. La veuve d'Hector, pleurant à vos genoux. Pedro, qu'as tu fait de nos montures ? Seigneur, je les ai attachées à la grille. Les deux camps sont rangés autour de nos murailles ; la ville avait été prise. Quelle faute ai-je commise ? Vous avez commis une faute très grave : on vous a offert de grands avantages, vous les avez refusés. Elle est plus jeune que je ne l'avais cru. Autant d'ennemis il a attaqués, autant il en a vaincu. Il y a beaucoup de roses, j'en ai cueilli quelques-unes. En avez-vous eu ? Non, je n'en ai pas eu. Voilà la dame que j'ai entendue chanter ; c'est une ballade écossaise que j'ai entendu chanter. Donnez-moi les livres que vous avez eu à lire. Vous ne saurez jamais les obstacles que j'ai eus à vaincre. Où sont vos oiseaux ? Je les ai fait sortir de leurs cages. Une femme s'est présentée à la porte ; je l'ai fait passer. C'est une fortification que j'ai appris à faire. Elle et Jean se sont écrit. Voici les chansons que j'ai écrites. Il y a eu de meilleurs poètes que Voltaire ; il n'y en a point eu de mieux récompensés. Cassius ne cherchait dans la perte de César que la vengeance de quelques injures qu'il avait reçues.

Reflective Verbs.

Nous arrivâmes bientôt au bord de la cataracte, qui s'annonçait par d'affreux mugissements. Elle est formée par la rivière Niagara, qui sort du lac Erie et se jette dans le lac Ontario. Au moment de

la chute c'est moins un fleuve qu'une mer, dont les torrents se pressent à l'ouverture d'un gouffre. La cataracte se divise en deux branches, et se courbe en fer à cheval. Entre les deux chutes s'avance une île creusée en dessous, qui pend avec tous ses arbres sur le chaos des ondes. La masse du fleuve, qui se précipite au midi, s'arrondit en un vaste cylindre, puis se déroule en une nappe de neige, et brille au soleil de toutes les couleurs ; celle qui tombe au levant descend dans une ombre effrayante ; on dirait une colonne d'eau du déluge. Mille arcs en ciel se courbent et se croisent sur l'abîme. L'onde, frappant le roc ébranlé, rejaillit en tourbillons d'écume, qui s'élèvent au-dessus des forêts, comme les fumées d'un vaste embrasement. — *Chateaubriand.*

Impersonal Verbs.

Ne m'envoyez pas ces livres s'il pleut, je ne veux pas qu'on me les abîme. Croyez-vous donc qu'il fasse mauvais temps ? Il me semble assez probable qu'il y aura de la pluie, il a grêlé et neigé toute la matinée. Il vaudra mieux garder ce volume de gravures à la maison ; il ne faut pas le prêter. Il est convenu que mon ami l'aura. Y-a-t-il des planches à cet ouvrage ? Il y en avait autrefois, mais quelqu'un les a enlevées. Qu'y-a-t-il ? que vous est-il arrivé ? J'ai fait une corne à ce feuillet. Il importe peu. J'emporte votre dictionnaire ; cela vous va-t-il ? Pourquoi faire ? Il me faut écrire mon thème latin, il s'agit d'obtenir le prix, aussi faut-il que je travaille de mon mieux. Cela va sans dire, mais il vaudrait mieux rester ici, car il fait sombre dans votre cabinet de travail.

Idioms with Avoir and Être.

C'est à vous de parler. Il s'est bâti bien des maisons à Paris depuis dix ans. Voilà où nous en sommes. Où en sommes-nous dans notre histoire ? Vous n'y êtes pas. Ne sommes nous pas de trop ici ? Madame n'y est pas. Nous sommes brouillés. À qui est-ce à lire ? Ne me dérangez pas, je suis à travailler. Ce crayon est à moi. Elle en est pour ses peines. Nous allons faire une excursion, voulez-vous être des nôtres ? Voici ce qui en est. Vous y êtes pour quelque chose. À qui en avez-vous ? Il y a dix ans de cela. Nous sommes des hommes comme vous : nous avons faim, soif, sommeil, froid ou chaud comme vous. Avez-vous besoin de quelque chose ? Vous pleurez ! qu'y-a-t-il ? Je n'ai rien. À qui donc avez-vous ? Vous avez tort de vous fâcher. J'ai envie de m'en aller, mais j'ai beau essayer, je ne suis pas à même de partir. Venez donc !

Je suis à vous à l'instant. Combien y-a-t-il que vous êtes ici ? Quel âge a-t-il ? Croyez-vous qu'il y soit pour quelque chose ?

The translation will be found in the Index, under the chief verb in each sentence, infinitive mood.

Idiomatic Phrases.

I.

Faire.

Cela ne me fait rien. Faites entrer. Faites-moi grâce de ces détails. Eh bien ! pourquoi me faire tant de questions ? Je n'ai que faire de vos dons. Faites-lui mes amitiés. Comme vous voilà fait ! J'ai fait dix lieues aujourd'hui. Le plus fort est fait. C'en est fait. Quand ferez-vous venir ces livres ? Faites attention à votre travail. Je ferai mon possible. As-tu fait mal à ta petite sœur. Non, quoiqu'elle fasse semblant d'avoir mal au bras. Élise se fait faire une robe. Vous faites-vous bâtir une bibliothèque ? Ne fais pas la bête. Ce thème est à refaire.

II.

Falloir, pouvoir, devoir, savoir.

Il m'a fallu prendre de grandes précautions. Il lui faut deux heures pour sarcler ces parterres. C'est un homme comme il faut. Combien vous faut-il ? Il s'en faut de beaucoup que votre piano soit aussi bon que le nôtre. Peu s'en faut que je sois tombé. Que vous faut-il ? Il faut partir sur le champ. Puisse-t-il arriver bientôt ? Ne me reprochez pas, je n'y peux rien. Cela se peut-il ? Il se peut que Jean remporte un prix ce trimestre. Je suis rompu de fatigue, je n'en puis plus. Cela doit être vrai, vous avez l'air fatigué. Cherchez mes gants, il doit y avoir encore une paire sur la table. Qui est là ? Personne que je sache. Venez demain. Je ne saurais, ma journée est prise. Y-a-t-il une bonne traduction de ce livre ! Je ne saurais vous le dire.

III.

Aller, venir, tenir, vouloir.

Comment allez-vous ? Il y va de ma vie. Vas-y sur le champ. Ce chapeau ne va pas avec votre robe. Au pis aller, nous pouvons aller à Trouville. Pardon, l'air de la mer ne me va point. Je viens de rentrer ; j'ai fait tenir la lettre à son adresse. D'où vient-il que vous êtes toujours sorti ? je sais à présent à quoi m'en tenir. Où

voulez-vous en venir ? je n'ai fait qu'aller et venir. Elle est très jolie, elle tient de sa mère. S'il ne tenait qu'à moi, vous serez déjà à Paris ; mais votre tuteur n'a pas cédé, il a tenu bon. Je n'y tiens plus, il faut beaucoup d'argent pour aller si loin. Qu'à cela ne tienne, ne m'en voulez pas. Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire ? je tiens à rester ici, voilà tout.

Verbs and Prepositions.

Mon tuteur m'accable de reproches ; il m'a chargé de lui rendre le compte exacte de toutes mes dépenses depuis six mois. Eh bien, vous dépendez de lui, vous ne gagnerez rien à le tromper, décidément il n'a pas à se louer de vous. J'avais toujours espéré de succéder à la place que son fils occupe dans ses bureaux, mais maintenant il se défie de moi. Il est vrai que vous avez abusé de sa patience, il me semble étonnant qu'il ne s'en soit pas aperçu depuis longtemps. Ignore-t-il toujours l'étendue de vos dettes ? Hélas ! oui ; je ne dois m'en prendre qu'à moi-même de ce que m'arrive. J'en conviens, mais je vous supplie de tout avouer ; votre tuteur vous attend depuis le matin, n'écoutez plus les mauvais conseils de vos prétendus amis, et promettez-lui d'obéir à l'avenir à ses ordres.

Adverbs.

Ces chevaux marchent lentement parce que la voiture est chargée lourdement ; cependant ils pourraient aller plus vite si le charretier les conduisait mieux. Cet homme grossier jure après eux, et pourtant les pauvres bêtes sont bien innocentes. Il en est souvent ainsi : les gens qui font mal ne voit pas leur faute ; sans cela ils se corrigeraient certainement, ils éviteraient soigneusement de recommencer ; et ils prendraient petit à petit l'importante habitude de bien faire. Mais ils défendent âprement leur conduite, ils soutiennent sincèrement qu'ils font bien, ils recommencent de nouveau, si l'occasion se présente de même ; ainsi l'expérience est à refaire toujours, et cependant le mal retombe sans cesse sur ceux qui les touchent de près.—*Guide Pratique, Yon.*

Prepositions.

Du sein de l'océan s'élèvent dans l'atmosphère des fleuves qui vont couler dans les deux mondes ; Dieu ordonne aux vents de les distribuer sur les îles et sur les continents ; ces invisibles enfants de l'air les transportent sous mille formes diverses : tantôt ils les étendent dans le ciel comme des voiles d'or et des pavillons de soie, tantôt ils les roulent en forme d'horribles dragons et de lions mugis-

sants, qui vomissent les feux du tonnerre; ils les versent sur les montagnes en rosées, en pluies, en grêle, en neige, en torrents impétueux. Quelque bizarres que paraissent leurs services, chaque partie de la terre en reçoit tous les ans sa portion d'eau, et en éprouve l'influence. Chemin faisant, ils déploient sur les plaines liquides de la mer la variété de leurs caractères: les uns rident à peine la surface de ses flots, les autres les roulent en ondes d'azur; ceux-ci les bouleversent, et couvrent d'écume les plus hauts promontoires.

Cousin-Despréaux.

On Grammar.

Quand nous parlons, c'est que nous voulons faire connaître, exprimer à quelqu'un ce que nous nous disons à nous mêmes, ou notre pensée. Pour exprimer la pensée il faut, en effet, se servir de moyens sensibles qu'on appelle des langages. L'homme se sert pour exprimer sa pensée de deux principaux langages: l'un, sensible à l'oreille, le plus simple et le plus usuel, est le langage parlé, ou la parole; l'autre, sensible aux yeux et reproduisant pour eux la parole même, est le langage écrit, ou l'écriture. Quand nous pensons, c'est toujours à un sujet quelconque auquel nous reconnaissons, par le verbe, une qualité qui est son attribut. Reconnaître ainsi un attribut au sujet, c'est faire un jugement dont le sujet, le verbe et l'attribut, sont les trois termes essentiels ou constitutifs, et dont l'expression s'appelle proposition. La proposition, étant l'expression d'un jugement, se compose des mêmes termes constitutifs. Les éléments dont se compose un jugement sont des souvenirs ou idées, qu'on exprime par des mots. On reconnaît dix espèces principales d'idées simples, auxquelles correspondent chez nous, dans l'expression, dix espèces de mots. Ces dix espèces de mots, comprenant tout ce qui peut servir à l'expression de la pensée par la parole (reproduite à volonté par l'écriture) ont reçu le nom de parties du discours. Les mots exprimant une même idée étant différents dans chaque pays, l'ensemble des mots dont on peut se servir dans un pays pour y faire connaître sa pensée en forme le langage, qu'on ne peut employer correctement sans en suivre les règles particulières. L'ensemble des règles qu'il faut suivre pour parler et écrire correctement une langue, forme un art qu'on appelle la grammaire de cette langue. Notre langue nationale est la langue française, dont la grammaire s'appelle la grammaire française, — *Guide Pratique, Yon.*

INDEX AND VOCABULARY.

ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

N.B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs in the Grammar, unless marked p. Feminine nouns are marked f. Masculine words alike in both languages are not given.

ACC	ART	CON
Accent, 3, 10	Article, 31. Meaning of, 31. Agrees in gender and number with noun. Used in French, but not in English, 99. Exceptions, 99. Represents <i>some</i> , <i>any</i> , 100. Used with countries, etc., 99	Bored, <i>ennuyé</i>
Active and passive verbs convertible, 80	As, <i>comme</i> ; as soon as, <i>aussitôt que, dès que</i>	Boy, <i>garçon</i>
Adjectives, 33. Complement of, 108. Comparison of, 36. Feminine, 35. Position of, 106. Syntax of, 101-105. Demonstratives, 46. Indefinite, 48. Syntax of, 101. Numeral, 42-45. Possessive, 47. Syntax of, 109. Used adverbially, 87. Expressing dimension, 107	Ask, <i>demander</i>	Box, <i>malle, f. boîte, f.</i>
Adverb, 86. Syntax of, 152-157. Simple and compound, 152	At, <i>à</i> ; at home, <i>à la maison</i> ; <i>chez moi, lui</i> , etc.	Bring, <i>apporter, amener</i>
Affair, <i>affaire, f.</i>	Bad, <i>mauvais</i>	Build, <i>bâtir</i>
After, <i>après</i> ; after that, <i>après que</i>	Badly, <i>mal</i>	Building, <i>bâtiment</i>
Agreeable, <i>agréable</i>	Balcony, <i>balcon</i>	But, <i>mais</i>
All, <i>tout</i>	Ball, <i>bal</i> . Toy, shot, <i>balle, f.</i>	By-and-by, <i>tout à l'heure</i>
Allowance, <i>argent de poche, m.</i> ; <i>pension, f.</i>	Band-box, <i>carton</i>	
Also, <i>aussi</i>	Bank, <i>banque, f.</i>	Calculate, <i>calculer</i>
Although, <i>quoique</i> (gov. subj.)	Be, <i>être, v. p. 65</i> . Observations on, 74. With neuter verbs, 83. With intransitive, 84	Calm, <i>calme</i>
Always, <i>toujours</i>	Before, (time) <i>avant</i> ; (place) <i>devant</i>	Capitals, 9
And, <i>et</i>	Believe, <i>croire</i>	Carrosse, <i>coach</i>
Answer, <i>répondre, v.</i>	Bench, <i>banc</i>	Carry, <i>porter</i>
Answer, <i>réponse, f.</i>	Blind, <i>aveugle</i>	In case, <i>en cas que</i>
Apostrophe, 11	Blue, <i>bleu</i>	Castle, <i>château</i>
Arrest, <i>arrêter</i>	Bookseller, <i>libraire</i>	<i>Cédille, f. 12</i>
Arrive, <i>arriver</i>	Bookshop, <i>librairie, f.</i>	Chair, <i>chaise, f.</i>
		Chemist, <i>pharmacien</i>
		Child, <i>enfant, m. f.</i>
		Choose, <i>choisir</i>
		Cold, <i>rhume</i> (an illness); <i>froid</i>
		Coldness, <i>froid; la froid-deur, f.</i>
		Come, <i>venir</i> ; come and play, <i>venez jouer</i>
		Complement of adject 108; of adverb, 95; <i>t</i> verb, 59, 60
		Conjugation, 70. Four regular conjug., p. 70
		Negative and interrogative, p. 68. Of impersonal verbs, 81.

CON

Passive, 79. Reflective, 62. Notes on first conjug., 75; on second, 76; third, 77; fourth, 78
 Conjunction, 91. Four, which govern indicative and subjunctive, 166. Syntax of, 166
 Contradict, *contredire*, 78.
 Copy, *copie*, f.
 Copy, *copier*, v.
 Cough, *toux*, f.
 Cough, *tousser*, v.
 Count up, *compter*, *calculer*
 Country (native), *pays*; *patrie*, f.
 Cow, *vache*, f.
 Curate, *vicaire*
 Cure, *guérir*, v.
 Cure, *guérison*, f.
 Daughter, *filie*, f.
 Day, *jour*; whole day, *journée*, f.; to-day, *aujourd'hui*; everyday, *tous les jours*
 Dear, *cher*
 Deceive, *tromper*
 Defend, *défendre*
 Depart, *partir*
 Desire, *désir*.
 Dictionary, *dictionnaire*
 Dine, *dîner*, v.
 Dinner, *dîner*
 Do, does, 78
 Doctor, *médecin*; *docteur* (when speaking to a physician)
 Dog, *chien*
 Doubt, *doute*
 Dress, *robe*, f. (in a general sense) *toilette*, f.
 Egg, *œuf*
 Elbow, *coude*
 Envy, *envie*, f.
 Expect, *attendre*

Fact, *fait*
 False, *faux* -sse, f. p. 25
 Father, *père*

FEE

Feel, *sentir*
 Feminine, in adj. 35; of nouns, 25
 Find, *trouver*
 Finish, *finir*, *achever*
 Flight of steps, *perron*
 Flower, *fleur*, f.
 For, *pour*, 161
 Forbid, *défendre à*
 Fork, *fourchette*, f.
 Friday, *vendredi*
 Friend, *ami*
 Future, how formed, 68
 Garden, *jardin*
 Gardener, *jardinier*
 Gather, *cueillir*
 Genders of nouns, 23-25, 98
 Girl, *filie*, f.
 Give, *donner*
 Go, *aller*, p. 75; go away, *s'en aller*, p. 76; go out, *sortir*
 Goat, *chèvre*, f.
 Good, *bon*; -ne, f.
 Great, *grand*
 Green, *vert*
 Guitar, *guitare*, f.
 Have, *avoir*, p. 55
 Hear, *entendre*
 Her, *sa*, 47
 Here, *ici*; here is, or here are, *voici*
 His, *son*, 47; *le sien*, 55
 Hold, *tenir*
 Home, *la maison*; at home, *chez moi*, *chez lui*, etc., 90
 Horse, *cheval*, 26
 How, *comment*, 157
 However, *cependant*, *néanmoins*
 Hum, *fredonner* (*bourdonner* for insects)
 Hunger, *faim*, f.
 Hyphen, *tiret*, *trait-d'union*, p. 64

I, in *connaître*, etc., p. 122

MAI

Ill-luck, *malheur*
 Impersonal verbs, with *avoir*, 64
 Imposition, *pensum*
 In, *dans*; *en*, 115, 159; in case, *en cas que*
 Indicative after conjunc. 166
 Infantry, *infanterie*, f.
 Infinitive instead of pres. part. 90, 131.
 How used in French, 180
 Inflection, 30
 Ink, *encre*; -stand, *encrier*
 Interjection, 92
 Invalid, *malade*
 Iron, *fer*
 It is, *c'est*; it is true, *c'est vrai*; *c'est juste*; it is they, *ce sont eux*, 74

John, *Jean*
 Just, *juste*; just now, *tantôt*

Keltic, 4
 Kettle, *bouilloire*
 Knife, *couteau*

Large, *grand*
 Late, *tard*; to be late, *être en retard*
 Lead, v. *mener*
 Lecture, *conférence*, f.
 Letter, *lettre*, f.
 Levy taxes, *imposer des impôts*; *percevoir*
 Lily, *lis*
 Listen, *écouter*
 Long time, *longtemps*
 Look at, *regarder*
 Lose, *perdre*

Maid-servant, *bonne*, f.; maid-of-all-work, *servante* (*bonne à tout faire*) ady's-maid, *femme de chambre*, f.

MAK	PAC	STR
Make, <i>faire</i> , 78; have made, <i>faire faire</i> , 78	Pack, <i>emballer</i> , v.	Quick, quickly, <i>vite</i>
Man, <i>homme</i>	Package, <i>paquet</i> , <i>colis</i>	Quiet, <i>tranquillité</i> , n.; <i>tranquille</i> , adj.
Master (of languages, etc.), <i>professeur</i> ; of a house, etc., <i>maître</i>	Parish, <i>paroisse</i> , f.	
Medicine, <i>médecine</i> , f.	Participle present, 85.	Receive, <i>recevoir</i> .
Misfortune, <i>malheur</i>	When variable, 186.	Recompence, <i>récompense</i> , f.
Monday, <i>lundi</i>	Different use in French and English, 187.	Rent, <i>loyer</i>
Mood, <i>mode</i> , 65, 144	After <i>en</i> , 187. P. past, 189. With direct complement, 140. With <i>être</i> , 189. Invariable with intransitive or impersonal verbs. With reflective, 141. Followed by an infinitive, 142. With <i>en</i> or adv. of quantity, 142	Return something, <i>rendre</i>
Mother, <i>mère</i> , f.	Parts of speech, 15	Reward, <i>récompenser</i> , v.; <i>récompense</i> , f.
My own, etc., 117	Passive verbs, 61	Riches, <i>richesses</i> , f.
	Pasteboard, <i>carton</i>	
Necessary (to be), <i> falloir</i> , p. 103; it is necessary, <i>il faut</i>	Pen, <i>plume</i> , f.	Saturday, <i>samedi</i>
Negative in simple and compound tenses, 73	Perceive, <i>apercevoir</i>	Scent, <i>parfum</i>
Negro, <i>negre</i>	Pocket money, <i>argent de poche</i> .	Scold, <i>gronder</i> , v.
Neither—nor, <i>ni . . . ni</i>	Possession indicated by <i>à</i> , 53	Serious, <i>sérieux</i> , -se, f.
Nest, <i>nid</i>	Postage stamp, <i>timbre de poste</i> , f.	Set out, <i>partir</i>
Neuter, <i>neutre</i> . Neuter verbs, 63	Postman, <i>facteur</i>	Several, <i>plusieurs</i> , 48 d.
No, <i>non</i> ; <i>je crois que non</i> , I think not; <i>non plus</i> , neither	Post-office order, <i>mandat de poste</i>	Shoe, <i>soulier</i>
None, <i>aucun</i> , 48	Prayer, <i>prière</i> , f.	Shop, <i>magasin</i> ; small shop, <i>boutique</i> , f.
Noon, <i>midi</i> , 45	Preposition, 88. Meaning of name, 88. Simple; compound, 88.	Short, <i>court</i> ; shortly, <i>courtement</i> ; in a short time, <i>sous peu</i>
Not, <i>pas</i> ; not at all, <i>point</i>	Governing verbs, 90.	Should like. See <i>vouloir</i> , p. 104
Note, <i>billet</i>	Repeated, 90. With personal pronouns, 163	Sing, <i>chanter</i> ; sing in tune, <i>chanter juste</i> ; sing out of tune, <i>chanter faux</i>
Number, 16. Abstract, 19. Collective, 18. Common and proper, 17. Compound, 21. Gender, 23–25. Number, 26–29. Case, 30. Abstract nouns always singular, 28. Plural of foreign words and proper nouns, 28; of compound nouns, 28. Used adverbially, 96. Omitting <i>de</i> and <i>à</i> , 97. Used adjectivally, 99 b.	Pronoun, 50. Demonstrative 54. Syntax of, 118. Disjunctive, 53, 116. Interrogative, 57. Personal, 56. Syntax of, 113. Possessive, 55, 117. Relative, 56, 121. Divided from antecedent by another noun, 125. Resuming pr. p. 157	Skate, <i>patin</i>
Number (of nouns), 26–29	Proposition, 94. Complement, 95	Skirt, <i>jupe</i> , f.
Obey, <i>obéir à</i>	Punctuation, 175	Sky, <i>ciel</i> , 27
On, <i>sur</i>	Punish, <i>punir</i>	Sleep, v. <i>dormir</i>
Oneself, <i>soi-même</i> , 116	Pupil, <i>élève</i> , m.f.	Sleep, n. <i>sommeil</i>
Orthography, 5		Slowly, <i>lentement</i>
		Small, <i>petit</i>
		Smell, <i>sentir</i>
		Sofa <i>canapé</i>
		Soldier, <i>soldat</i>
		Some, <i>du</i> , 32; <i>quelque</i> something, <i>quelque chose</i>
		Soon, <i>bientôt</i>
		Speak, <i>parler</i>
		Speech, <i>discours</i>
		Still, <i>tranquille</i> , adj. <i>cependant</i> , adv.
		Strange, <i>étrange</i>
		Stranger, <i>étranger</i>

SUM	VER	YES
Sum, <i>calcul</i>	Verb, 59. Meaning of name. Transitive and intransitive, 59, 60.	Third conj. p. 93. Irreg. v. of, p. 98-102.
Sunday, <i>dimanche</i>	Agrees with subject, 128. After a collective, 128. After adv. of quantity, 129. Auxiliary verbs, 72, 135.	Notes on, 77. Fourth conj. p. 106. Irreg. v. of, p. 110-121. Notes on, 78
Syntax, 93	Defective, 82. Impersonal, 64, 81. Intransitive, 63. Neuter, 68, 83. Passive, 79. Notes on, 80. Reflective, 62, 145. Complement, 60. Conjugation, 70. Syntax, 128. Verbs followed by prep. 147.	Vowels, 5
Take, <i>prendre</i> ; take care, <i>prendre garde</i>	Taking different prep. in French and English, p. 172-178. Taking a prep. in French only, 149. With different meanings as they take <i>à</i> or <i>de</i> , 151. Translation of pres. part. after an active verb, 137. Weak and strong v. 71. Regular v. 1st conj. p. 70. Notes on, p. 75. Irregular v. of 1st, p. 75-77. Second conj. p. 80-83. Notes on, 76.	
Tall, <i>grand</i>	Irreg. v. of, p. 87.	Wait, <i>attendre</i>
Tax, <i>impôt</i>		Water, v. <i>arroser</i>
Taxgatherer, <i>percepteur</i>		Water, <i>eau</i> , f. ; <i>onde</i> , f. (poetical)
Teacher, <i>instituteur</i> ; - <i>trice</i> , f. 25		Watering-pot, <i>arrosoir</i>
Then, <i>alors</i> , 157		Weary, <i>fatigué</i> , <i>las</i> , <i>lassé</i>
Throw, <i>jeter</i> , 75		Wednesday, <i>mercredi</i>
Thursday, <i>jeudi</i>		What, <i>quel</i> , <i>lequel</i> : at what o'clock ? <i>à quelle heure</i>
Thus, <i>ainsi</i>		Whatever, <i>quel que</i>
Ticket, <i>billet</i>		When, <i>quand</i> , <i>lorsque</i>
Time, <i>temps</i>		Whence, <i>d'où</i>
Tire, <i>fatiguer</i>		Which, <i>quel</i> , <i>lequel</i> , 57
To-day, <i>aujourd'hui</i> ; to-morrow, <i>demain</i>		While, <i>pendant que</i>
Too, <i>trop</i>		Willingly, <i>volontiers</i> , <i>de bon gré</i>
Toothache, <i>mal aux dents</i>		Wise, <i>sage</i>
Transitive verbs take <i>avoir</i> , 135		Wish, <i>désirer</i> , v.
Translation, <i>traduction</i>		Will, or will have, p. 104
Tree, <i>arbre</i>		Without, <i>sans</i>
Understand, <i>comprendre</i>		Yesterday, <i>hier</i>
Until, <i>jusqu'à</i> ; <i>jusqu'à ce que</i> , governs subj.		

INDEX AND VOCABULARY.

FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

N.B.—Masculine words alike in both languages are not given. Feminine ones are marked *f.* The references are to paragraphs, unless marked *p.*, for page.

A	AGR	ART
<i>A, to, at; belonging to, 164; à même de, able to</i>	<i>Agrandir, to enlarge</i>	<i>Angélique, angelic</i>
<i>Abandonner, to abandon</i>	<i>Agréable, agreeable</i>	<i>Angleterre, f. England</i>
<i>Abîme, abyss</i>	<i>Aïeul, grandfather, ancestor, p. 16</i>	<i>S'annoncer, to proclaim oneself</i>
<i>Abîmer, to spoil a thing</i>	<i>Aimer, to love</i>	<i>Apercevoir, to perceive</i>
<i>Abri, shelter</i>	<i>Aîné, eldest</i>	<i>Apostrophe, f. 11</i>
<i>Abricot, apricot</i>	<i>Ainsi, thus</i>	<i>Appeler, to call, 75, 151</i>
<i>Abriter, to shelter</i>	<i>Aisé, easy</i>	<i>Applaudir, to applaud</i>
<i>Abstinence, f.</i>	<i>Aisement, easily</i>	<i>Apporter, to bring</i>
<i>Abuser de, to misuse, 151</i>	<i>Ajouter, to add</i>	<i>Appréhender, to apprehend, 153</i>
<i>Accabler, to overwhelm</i>	<i>Alerte, alert</i>	<i>Apprendre, to learn</i>
<i>Accent, 8</i>	<i>Aller, to go; to suit, p. 75; aller mieux, to improve in health, &c.; il y va de..., to be at stake; aller au pas, to go at a foot's pace; aller sans dire, to be understood thing; ne faire qu'aller et venir, to be back directly; comment allez-vous? how are you?</i>	<i>S'approcher de, to come near to</i>
<i>Accepter, to accept</i>	<i>Allumer, to light</i>	<i>Aprément, with asperity</i>
<i>Accès, access; fit of pain, illness</i>	<i>Alors, then</i>	<i>Après, after</i>
<i>Accroire, to believe, 78</i>	<i>Amélioration, f. improvement</i>	<i>Arbre, tree</i>
<i>Achever, to complete</i>	<i>Amener, to bring, 75</i>	<i>Arc en ciel, rainbow, 27</i>
<i>Acier, steel</i>	<i>Ami, m. friend</i>	<i>Argent, silver; money; argent de poche, pocket money</i>
<i>Acquérir, to acquire</i>	<i>Amour, love, p. 12</i>	<i>Armée, f. army.</i>
<i>Acteur, actor, 25</i>	<i>Amuser, to amuse</i>	<i>Arrêter, to arrest; stop</i>
<i>Actif, 35, active</i>	<i>Amusant, amusing</i>	<i>Arriver, to arrive; happen</i>
<i>Adjectif, adjective, 33-49. Syntax of, 101-105</i>	<i>An, m. year; année, f. whole year; tout le long de l'année, all the year round</i>	<i>S'arrondir, to round off</i>
<i>Adverbe, 86. Syntax of, 152</i>	<i>Ancien, -ne, f. ancient</i>	<i>Arroser, to water</i>
<i>Affreux, -se, f. frightful</i>		<i>Article, 81. Syntax of, 99. Definite; when omitted, 99 d. Used in French but not in English, 99, 100. Partitive, 81, 82</i>
<i>Afin que, in order that, governs subj.</i>		<i>Artiste, artist (whether painter, actor, singer, etc.)</i>
<i>Afrique, f. Africa</i>		
<i>S'agir de, idiomatic verb, best translated by the question is; the thing is to.....</i>		
<i>Agiter, to agitate, shake; s'agiter, to agitate oneself; fidget</i>		

ASS

Assassiner, to assassinate
 Assez, enough
 Assiduité, assiduity
 Attacher, to attach; *fascien*
 Attaque, *f.* attack
 Attaquer, to attack
 Attendre, to expect, wait for
 Attendu, considering that, 89
 Attribuer à, to attribute to
 Attribut, attribute
 Au, to the, 31
 Au-dessous de, below
 Au-dessus de, above
 Au lieu de, instead of
 Au pis aller, at the worst
 Augmentatives, 20
 Aujourd'hui, to-day, now-a-days
 Auparavant, first; before, adv.
 Auprès de, near to, 158
 Aussi, also; accordingly
 Autant, as much; d'autant moins, so much the less, 156
 Automne, m. and *f.* autumn
 Autour de, around, p. 132
 Autre, other
 Autrefois, formerly
 Autrui, another; one's neighbour
 Auxiliary verbs, 72
 Avancer, to advance; project
 Avant, before (with reference to time or order), 158; avant la fin du mois, before the end of the month; avant que, gov. subj.
 Advantage, advantage
 Avec, with
 Avenir, future; à l'avenir, in future
 Aveugle, blind
 Avis, notice, counsel, opinion
 Avoir, to have, p. 55;

AVO

avoir beau, to try vainly; j'ai beau essayer, I vainly try;
 avoir besoin, to need;
 avoir faim, honte, peur, raison, etc., to be hungry, ashamed, afraid, right, etc.; n'avoir rien, to ail nothing;
 qu'y a-t-il? what is the matter? en avoir à, to be angry with;
 avoir envie de, to wish;
 avoir mal à, to be hurt in..., have pain in...
 Avouer, to own
 Azur, azure
 Bas, low, p. 28
 Bal, ball
 Ballade, *f.* ballad
 Balle, *f.* a toy-ball
 Barreau, bar, pl. -x
 Bataille, *f.* battle
 Se bâtir, to build for oneself; idiomatically, to be built
 Bâton, stick, downstroke
 Beau, *f.* belle, beautiful, 105
 Beaucoup, much, 154
 Beauté, *f.* beauty
 Bec, beak
 Bénir, to bless, 76
 Bétail (pl. bestiaux), cattle; but bétail is used in a pl. sense
 Bête, *f.* animal, beast
 Bêta, adj. stupid
 Bibliothèque, *f.* library
 Bien, well; n. good; des biens, property
 Bientôt, soon.
 Billet, note
 Bizarre, strange, odd
 Blâmer, to blame
 Blessier, to wound
 Bleu, blue
 Bœuf, ox
 Bon, -ne, *f.* good; bon-jour, good day, good morning

CEP

Bonheur, happiness
 Bonté, *f.* goodness
 Bord, edge, border
 Bouilloire, *f.* kettle
 Bouleverser, to upset, overturn
 Bourgogne, *f.* Burgundy
 Bouvreuil, bulfinch
 Brasier, hot coals; brasier, furnace
 Briller, to shine
 Brouillé, confused; être brouillé, to have quarrelled with
 Bruissement, rustling
 Bruit, noise
 Brûler, to burn
 Brutalité, *f.* brutality
 Buffle, buffalo
 Bureau, office; high desk (pl. -x)
 Cabinet de travail, study
 Cadre, frame
 Cage, *f.* cage
 Cahier, copy-book
 Calcul, sum
 Calculer, to calculate
 Camerade, m. or *f.* comrade
 Car, for
 Caractère, m. character
 Carton, cardboard; band-box
 Cas, case
 En cas que, in case, gov. subj.
 Case, 3, 80
 Cataracte, *f.* cataract, waterfall
 Causer, to converse; cause
 Cavalier, horseman
 Ce, that, 54, 56; c'est, il est, 118; c'est à, 53
 Céder, to yield
 Cédille, *f.* 12
 Cela, that, 54
 Célèbre, celebrated
 Celui, he, p. 42
 Cendre, *f.* cinder, ash
 Cent, hundred, 43
 Cependant, nevertheless; meanwhile

CER

Certain, *certain*, 48 b
 Certainement, *certainly*
 Cesser, *ceasing*
 Chacun, *each*, 48 c., 126
 Chagriner, *to vex*
 Chaise, *f. chair*
 Chaleur, *f. heat*
 Champ, *field*; *sur le*
champ, at once
 Changer, *to change*
 Chanson, *f. song*
 Chant, *song*
 Chanter, *to sing*; *chanter*
faux, to sing out of
tune; *chanter juste, to*
sing in tune
 Chapeau, *hat*
 Chaque, *each*, 48, 112
 Chardonneret, *goldfinch*
 Charger, *to charge*; *load*
 Charmant, *charming*
 Charretier, *carter*
 Chasser, *to hunt*; *drive*
away; *dismiss igno-*
miniously
 Château, *castle*; *large*
country house
 Chaud, *hot*; *avoir chaud,*
to be hot
 Chef, *chief*
 Chemin, *road*; *way*;
chemin faisant, on
the way
 Chêne, *oak*.
 Cher, *dear*
 Chercher, *to seek, fetch*
 Cheval, *horse*, 26
 Cheveu (pl. -x), *hair*
 Chèvre, *f. goat*
 Chez, *at the house of*; *chez*
moi, at my home
 Chien, *dog*
 Choir, *to fall*
 Choisir, *to choose*
 Chose, *f. thing*
 Chut! *hush!*
 Chute, *f. a fall*
 Ciel, *sky, heaven*, 27
 Ci-inclus, *included*, 104
 Ci-joint, *joined with this,*
 104
 Clairière, *f. a clearing*
 Clovis, *king of France,*
 A.D. 487-511

CŒU

Cœur, *heart*
 Colis, *a package*
 Collégien, *a schoolboy*
 Colonne, *f. column*
 Commander, *to command*
 Comme, *as*
 Commencer, *to begin*
 Comment, *how*, 157
 Commettre, *to commit*
 Compagnie, *f. company*
 Comparaison of *adj.*, 86
 Complement of *verb*, 132
 Se composer, *to compose,*
be composed of
 Comprendre, *to compre-*
hend
 Compte, *sum total, ac-*
count
 Concentré, *concentrated*
 Concordance of *tenses*
 and *moods*, 144
 Conditional mood, 65,
 144
 Conduire, *to conduct,*
drive
 Conduite, *f. conduct*
 Conférence, *f. lecture*
 Confus, *confused*, 86
 Conjunction, 91, 166
 Connaitre, *to know*
 Conquérant, *conqueror*
 Conseil, *counsel*
 Consentir, *to consent*
 Consoler, *to console*
 Consonants, 6
 Constitutif, *constituent*
 Contraste, *contrast*
 Contre, *against*
 Contredire, *to contradict,*
 78
 Contrée, *f. country*
 Convenir de, *to own*;
agree to; *settle*
 Copier, *to copy*
 Corne, *f. horn*
 Corps, *body*
 Correctement, *correctly*
 Correspondre, *to corre-*
spond
 Corriger, *to correct*
 Cou, *neck*; *cou de biche,*
doe's neck, or doe-like
neck
 Couche, *f. stratum, bed*

DÉF

Couler, *to flow*; *cause*
flow; *slip through*
 Couleur, *f. colour*
 Coup, *blow*; *coup d'œil,*
glance
 Coupable, *guilty*
 Couple, *couple*, 24
 Courber, *to bend*
 Court, *short*
 Coûté, *p. 168*
 Couteau, *pl. -x. knife*
 Couvrir, *to cover*
 Craie, *f. chalk*
 Craindre, *to fear*
 Crainte que (de), *for fear*
of; *lest*
 Craintif, *fearful*
 Craquement, *a cracking*
 Crayon, *pencil*
 Creuser, *to hollow*
 Cri, *a cry*
 Criminel, *f. criminal*
 Critique, *m. a critic*; *f.*
a criticism
 Croire, *to believe*; *croire*
que oui, to believe so
 Croiser (se), *to cross one*
another
 Crouler, *to crumble down*
 Cueillir, *to pluck*
 Cuivre, *copper*
 Curieux, *curious*
 Cylindre, *cylinder*
 Dame, *f. a lady*
 Dangereux, -se, *f. dan-*
gerous
 Dans en, 159
 Davantage, *more*, 154
 De, *of, from*, 165; *de*
suite, without interrup-
tion
 Débarrasser, *to disem-*
barrass
 Débris, *wreck*; *remains*
 Début, *start in life, in a*
profession; *first ap-*
pearance; *beginning of*
a book, &c.
 Décidément, *decidedly*
 Défendre, *to defend, for-*
bid
 Défier de (se), *to mistrust*

DÉJ	DRE	ÊTRE
Déjà, <i>already</i>	Dresser, <i>to train</i>	Enfer, <i>hell</i>
Délíce, <i>delight</i> , 24	Dû, <i>due</i> ; avoir dû, <i>ought to have</i> , 77	Enlever, <i>to carry off</i>
Délié, <i>downstroke</i>	Durant, <i>during</i> , 88, 158	Ennemi, <i>enemy</i>
Demain, <i>to-morrow</i>		Ensemble, <i>together</i>
Demander, <i>to ask</i>		Ensemble, <i>the whole</i>
Demi, <i>half</i> , 104		Entendre, <i>to hear</i> ; <i>understand</i> ; s'entendre, <i>to understand one another</i>
Dénouement, <i>winding up of plot, &c.</i>	Eau, <i>f. water</i>	Entraîner, <i>to draw away</i>
Dépasser, <i>to outstrip</i> ; <i>surmount</i>	Ebranler, <i>to shake</i>	Entre, <i>between</i> , 11, 160
Dépense, <i>f. expense</i>	Echange, <i>f. exchange</i>	Entrée, <i>f. entrance</i>
Déployer, <i>to unfold</i>	Echapper, <i>to escape</i> , 185	Envelopper, <i>to envelop</i>
Depuis, <i>since</i> , 160	Echoir, <i>to fall due</i> , 77	Envers, <i>about</i> ; <i>towards</i> , 160
Déranger, <i>to disturb</i>	Ecole, <i>f. school</i>	Envie, <i>f. a wish</i> ; porter envie à, <i>to envy some one</i>
Dernier, <i>last</i>	Écossais, <i>Scotch</i>	Envoyer, <i>to send</i> , 75; envoyer chercher, <i>to send to seek, or fetch</i>
Dérouler, <i>to unroll</i>	Écouter, <i>to listen</i>	Epais, <i>-se, f. thick</i>
Descendre, <i>to descend</i>	Ecrire, <i>to write</i>	Eprouver, <i>to prove</i> ; <i>try, experience</i>
Désespoir, <i>despair</i>	Écriture, <i>f. handwriting</i>	Espagne, <i>f. Spain</i>
Dessous, <i>under</i>	Ecume, <i>f. foam</i>	Espèce, <i>f. species</i>
Dessus, <i>above</i>	Edifice, <i>edifice</i>	Espérer, <i>to hope</i> , 75, p. 201, note
Détour, <i>winding</i> ; <i>round-about way</i>	Effet, <i>effect</i> ; en effet, <i>in act</i>	Esprit, <i>mind</i> ; <i>wit</i>
Dette, <i>f. debt</i>	Effrayer, <i>to frighten</i> ; s'effrayer, <i>to be frightened by</i>	Essayer, <i>to try</i> , 75
Deux, <i>two</i>	Effroi, <i>fright</i>	Essentiel, <i>essential</i>
Devant, <i>before</i> , used to express place	Eh bien! <i>well!</i>	Et, <i>and</i> , 168
Devoir, <i>n. duty, task</i> ; <i>v. to owe</i> , 77; il doit avoir, <i>there must or should be</i>	S'élancer, <i>to spring forward</i>	Etablir, <i>to establish</i>
Dévoré, <i>to devour</i>	Elève, <i>m. f. pupil</i>	Etat, <i>state</i>
Dialect, p. 2	Elever, <i>to raise, to bring up</i>	Etendre, <i>to extend</i>
Dictionnaire, <i>dictionary</i>	Elle, <i>she</i>	Etendue, <i>f. extent</i>
Dieu, <i>pl. -x. God</i>	Emballer, <i>to pack</i>	Eternel, <i>-le, f. eternal</i>
Difficile, <i>difficult</i>	Embarrass, <i>embarrassment</i>	Étinceler, <i>to sparkle</i>
Diminutives, 20	Embarrasser, <i>to embarrass</i>	Etoile, <i>f. star</i>
Diner, <i>to dine</i>	Embellir, <i>to embellish</i>	Etonner, <i>to astonish</i> ; on s'étonne, <i>one wonders</i>
Dire, <i>to say</i>	Embrasement, <i>n. conflagration</i>	Etranger, <i>stranger</i> ; <i>adj. foreign</i>
Discours, <i>discourse</i>	Embraser, <i>to set fire to (on a large scale)</i>	Être, <i>a being</i>
Distribuer, <i>to distribute</i>	Embrasure, <i>f. opening</i>	Être, <i>to be</i> , pp. 65-8, 78-9; en être, <i>to make one of</i> ; to have got to; to have had (in idiomatic phrases); être de trop, <i>to be in the way</i> ; n'y être pas, <i>not to have understood</i> ; être brouillé, <i>to have quarrelled</i> ; à qui est-ce à
Dix, <i>ten</i> , 48	Emouvoir, <i>to be moved, or agitated</i>	
Don, <i>gift</i>	Empêcher, <i>to hinder</i>	
Donc, <i>then</i> , 157	Emploi, <i>employment</i>	
Donner, <i>to give</i>	Employer, <i>to employ</i> , p. 73	
Dont, <i>of whom, of which</i> , from whom, from which, 67, 124	Emporter, <i>to carry away</i>	
Dormir, <i>to sleep</i>	En, 52, 90, 115, 159. En with imperative, 118	
Doucement, <i>gently, gradually</i>	Encore, <i>again</i>	
Douceur, <i>f. gentleness</i>	S'endormir, <i>to fall asleep</i>	
Doute, <i>doubt</i>	Enfant, <i>m. f. child</i> ; <i>young person</i>	
Doux, <i>-ce, f. gentle</i>		

ÊTRE

whose turn is it to ? être à, to be at a place ; occupied with ; être pour ses peines, to have one's trouble for nothing ; être des nôtres, to make one of our party ; ce qui en est, this is how it stands ; y être pour quelque chose, to have a hand in ; y êtes-vous ? do you understand ? être à quelqu'un, to be at some one's disposal
Être preceded by ce, 74
Étroit, narrow
Etude, f. study ; office of a lawyer
Eux, they
Évènement, event
Eviter, to avoid
Exacte, exact
Examiner, to examine
Excepté, p. 132
Exemple, example ; par exemple ! I daresay ! indeed ! (ironical) ; for instance
Existence, f. existence
Exprimer, to express
Extrêmement, extremely
Fâcher, to vex
Façon, f. fashion, make ; sans façon, without ceremony
Facilement, easily
Facteur, postman
Faiblesse, f. weakness
Faillir, to fail, 76
Faire, to make ; faire faire, to have made, 78 ; faire la bête, to be silly ; — ses amitiés, to send one's love ; — attention, to pay attention ; — entrer, to show some one in ; — grâce à, to pardon ; — mal à, to hurt ; — de son mieux, to do one's best ; — peine à, to grieve some one ;

FAI

— son possible, to do all one can ; — des questions, to ask questions ; — semblant de, to feign ; — tenir, to despatch something to an address ; — venir, to make come, to procure ; n'avoir que faire de, to have no use for ; cela ne fait rien, that does not signify ; c'en est fait, it is all over ; le plus fort est fait, the hardest part is done ; comme vous voilà fait ! what a mess you are in ! ne faire que, to do nothing but . . . faire nuit, to grow dark.
Fait, done, p. 168
Faite, summit
Falloir, to be obliged, 77 ; peu s'en est fallu que, it was a very near thing that . . . il s'en faut de beaucoup, it is far from being ; il m'y faudra ; I shall need ; il faut, it is necessary ; combien vous faut-il ? how much do you want ? un homme comme il faut, a well-bred man (Old English, a proper man)
Familiier, familiar
Famille, f. family
Fatigué, tired
Faute, f. fault
Faux, -se, f. p. 25, false
Femme, f. woman ; wife
Fenêtre, f. window
Fer, iron ; fer à cheval, m. horseshoe
Férir, to strike, 76
Feu, fire
Feu, late, 104
Feuille, f. leaf
Feuilleter, leaf of book
Fier, proud
Se fier à, to trust to
Figure, f. face

GEN

Fille, f. girl ; daughter
Fils, son
Fin, f. the end
Finir, to finish
Fixé, fixed
Flamme, f. flame
Flammèche, f. flaming particle
Fléchir, yield under ; give way
Fleur, f. flower
Fleurir, to flourish, 76
Fleuve, a large river
Flot, wave
Fois, f. time ; à la fois, at once
Fonder, to found
Fondre, to melt ; pounce on
Force, f., force ; adj. many, 96 ; à force de, by force of
Forêt, f. forest
Forme, f. form
Former, to form
Fort, strong ; n. a fort
Fortification, f.
Foudre, f. 24, thunder, thunderbolt
Fougueux, -se, f. impetuous ; fiery
Fourchette, f. fork
Franc de port, prepaid, p. 143
Français, French
Frapper, to strike
Fredonner, to hum
Fumée, f. smoke
Fureur, f. fury
Fusiller, to shoot
Gagner, to gain
Galopper, to gallop
Gant, glove
Garantir, to warrant ; defend
Garde, guard ; keeper, 29
Garder, to keep
Gémir, to moan
Gêner, to constrain, get in the way of
Généralement, generally
Genou, pl. -x, knee

ASS

Assassiner, *to assassinate*
 Assez, *enough*
 Assiduité, *assiduity*
 Attacher, *to attach; fasten*
 Attaque, *f. attack*
 Attaquer, *to attack*
 Attendre, *to expect, wait for*
 Attendu, *considering that*, 89
 Attribuer à, *to attribute to*
 Attribut, *attribute*
 Au, *to the*, 31
 Au-dessous de, *below*
 Au-dessus de, *above*
 Au lieu de, *instead of*
 Au pis aller, *at the worst*
 Augmentatives, 20
 Aujourd'hui, *to-day, now-a-days*
 Auparavant, *first; before*, adv.
 Auprès de, *near to*, 158
 Aussi, *also; accordingly*
 Autant, *as much; d'autant moins, so much the less*, 156
 Automne, *m. and f. autumn*
 Autour de, *around*, p. 182
 Autre, *other*
 Autrefois, *formerly*
 Autrui, *another; one's neighbour*
 Auxiliary verbs, 72
 Avancer, *to advance; project*
 Avant, *before (with reference to time or order)*, 158; *avant la fin du mois, before the end of the month; avant que, gov. subj.*
 Avantage, *advantage*
 Avec, *with*
 Avenir, *future; à l'avenir, in future*
 Aveugle, *blind*
 Avis, *notice, counsel, opinion*
 Avoir, *to have*, p. 55;

AVO

avoir beau, *to try vainly; j'ai beau essayer, I vainly try*
 avoir besoin, *to need*
 avoir faim, *honte, peur, raison, etc., to be hungry, ashamed, afraid, right, etc.; n'avoir rien, to ail nothing; qu'y a-t-il? what is the matter? en avoir à, to be angry with; avoir envie de, to wish; avoir mal à, to be hurt in..., have pain in...*
 Avouer, *to own*
 Azur, *azure*
 Bas, *low*, p. 28
 Bal, *ball*
 Ballade, *f. ballad*
 Balle, *f. a toy-ball*
 Barreau, *bar*, pl. -x
 Bataille, *f. battle*
 Se bâtir, *to build for oneself; idiomatically, to be built*
 Bâton, *stick, downstroke*
 Beau, *f. belle, beautiful*, 105
 Beaucoup, *much*, 154
 Beauté, *f. beauty*
 Bec, *beak*
 Bénir, *to bless*, 76
 Bétail (pl. bestiaux), *cattle; but bétail is used in a pl. sense*
 Bête, *f. animal, beast*
 Bête, *adj. stupid*
 Bibliothèque, *f. library*
 Bien, *well; n. good; des biens, property*
 Bientôt, *soon*
 Billet, *note*
 Bizarre, *strange, odd*
 Blâmer, *to blame*
 Blessier, *to wound*
 Bleu, *blue*
 Boeuf, *ox*
 Bon, *-ne, f. good; bon-jour, good day, good morning*

CEP

Bonheur, *happiness*
 Bonté, *f. goodness*
 Bord, *edge, border*
 Bouilloire, *f. kettle*
 Bouleverser, *to upset, overturn*
 Bourgogne, *f. Burgundy*
 Bouvreuil, *bulfinch*
 Brasier, *hot coals; brasier; furnace*
 Briller, *to shine*
 Brouillé, *confused; être brouillé, to have quarrelled with*
 Bruissement, *rustling*
 Bruit, *noise*
 Brûler, *to burn*
 Brutalité, *f. brutality*
 Buffle, *buffalo*
 Bureau, *office; high desk (pl. -x)*
 Cabinet de travail, *study*
 Cadre, *frame*
 Cage, *f. cage*
 Cahier, *copy-book*
 Calcul, *sum*
 Calculer, *to calculate*
 Camerade, *m. or f. comrade*
 Car, *for*
 Caractère, *m. character*
 Carton, *cardboard; band-box*
 Cas, *case*
 En cas que, *in case, gov. subj.*
 Case, 3, 30
 Cataracte, *f. cataract, waterfall*
 Causer, *to converse; cause*
 Cavalier, *horseman*
 Ce, *that*, 54, 56; *c'est, il est, 118; c'est à, 53*
 Céder, *to yield*
 Cédille, *f. 12*
 Cela, *that*, 54
 Célèbre, *celebrated*
 Celui, *he*, p. 42
 Cendre, *f. cinder, ash*
 Cent, *hundred*, 43
 Cependant, *nevertheless; meanwhile*

CER

Certain, *certain*, 48 b
 Certainement, *certainly*
 Cesser, *ceasing*
 Chacun, *each*, 48 c., 126
 Chagriner, *to vex*
 Chaise, *f. chair*
 Chaleur, *f. heat*
 Champ, *field*; sur le champ, *at once*
 Changer, *to change*
 Chanson, *f. song*
 Chant, *song*
 Chanter, *to sing*; chanter faux, *to sing out of tune*; chanter juste, *to sing in tune*
 Chapeau, *hat*
 Chaque, *each*, 48, 112
 Chardonneret, *goldfinch*
 Charger, *to charge*; load
 Charmant, *charming*
 Charretier, *carter*
 Chasser, *to hunt*; *drive away*; *dismiss ignominiously*
 Château, *castle*; large country house
 Chaud, *hot*; avoir chaud, *to be hot*
 Chef, *chief*
 Chemin, *road*; way; chemin faisant, *on the way*
 Chêne, *oak*.
 Cher, *dear*
 Chercher, *to seek*, *fetch*
 Cheval, *horse*, 26
 Cheveu (pl. -x), *hair*
 Chèvre, *f. goat*
 Chez, *at the house of*; chez moi, *at my home*
 Chien, *dog*
 Choir, *to fall*
 Choisir, *to choose*
 Chose, *f. thing*
 Chut! *hush!*
 Chute, *f. a fall*
 Ciel, *sky, heaven*, 27
 Ci-inclus, *included*, 104
 Ci-joint, *joined with this*, 104
 Clairière, *f. a clearing*
 Clovis, king of France, A.D. 487-511

CŒU

Cœur, *heart*
 Colis, *a package*
 Collégien, *a schoolboy*
 Colonne, *f. column*
 Commander, *to command*
 Comme, *as*
 Commencer, *to begin*
 Comment, *how*, 157
 Commettre, *to commit*
 Compagnie, *f. company*
 Comparaison of adj., 36
 Complement of verb, 132
 Se composer, *to compose, be composed of*
 Comprendre, *to comprehend*
 Compte, *sum total, account*
 Concentré, *concentrated*
 Concordance of tenses and moods, 144
 Conditional mood, 65, 144
 Conduire, *to conduct, drive*
 Conduite, *f. conduct*
 Conférence, *f. lecture*
 Confus, *confused*, 86
 Conjunction, 91, 166
 Connaitre, *to know*
 Conquérant, *conqueror*
 Conseil, *counsel*
 Consentir, *to consent*
 Consoler, *to console*
 Consonants, 6
 Constitutif, *constituent*
 Contraste, *contrast*
 Contre, *against*
 Contredire, *to contradict*, 78
 Contrée, *f. country*
 Convenir de, *to own; agree to; settle*
 Copier, *to copy*
 Corne, *f. horn*
 Corps, *body*
 Correctement, *correctly*
 Correspondre, *to correspond*
 Corriger, *to correct*
 Cou, neck; cou de biche, *doe's neck, or doe-like neck*
 Couche, *f. stratum, bed*

DÉF

Couler, *to flow*; cause flow; slip through
 Couleur, *f. colour*
 Coup, *blow*; coup d'œil, *glance*
 Coupable, *guilty*
 Couple, *couple*, 24
 Courber, *to bend*
 Court, *short*
 Coûté, p. 168
 Couteau, pl. -x, *knife*
 Couvrir, *to cover*
 Craie, *f. chalk*
 Craindre, *to fear*
 Crainte que (de), *for fear of; lest*
 Craintif, *fearful*
 Craquement, *a cracking*
 Crayon, *pencil*
 Creuser, *to hollow*
 Cri, *a cry*
 Criminel, *f. criminal*
 Critique, m. *a critic*; f. *a criticism*
 Croire, *to believe*; croire que oui, *to believe so*
 Croiser (se), *to cross one another*
 Crouler, *to crumble down*
 Cueillir, *to pluck*
 Cuivre, *copper*
 Curieux, *curious*
 Cylindre, *cylinder*
 Dame, *f. a lady*
 Dangereux, -se, *f. dangerous*
 Dans and en, 159
 Davantage, *more*, 154
 De, of, from, 165; de suite, *without interruption*
 Débarrasser, *to disembarass*
 Débris, *wreck*; remains
 Début, *start in life, in a profession*; first appearance; beginning of a book, &c.
 Décidément, *decidedly*
 Défendre, *to defend, forbid*
 Dénier de (se), *to mistrust*

ASS

Assassiner, *to assassinate*
 Assez, *enough*
 Assiduité, *assiduity*
 Attacher, *to attach; fasten*
 Attaque, *f. attack*
 Attaquer, *to attack*
 Attendre, *to expect, wait for*
 Attendu, *considering that*, 89
 Attribuer à, *to attribute to*
 Attribut, *attribute*
 Au, *to the*, 31
 Au-dessous de, *below*
 Au-dessus de, *above*
 Au lieu de, *instead of*
 Au pis aller, *at the worst*
 Augmentatives, 20
 Aujourd'hui, *to-day, now-a-days*
 Auparavant, *first; before*, adv.
 Auprès de, *near to*, 158
 Aussi, *also; accordingly*
 Autant, *as much; d'autant moins, so much the less*, 156
 Automne, *m. and f. autumn*
 Autour de, *around*, p. 132
 Autre, *other*
 Autrefois, *formerly*
 Autrui, *another; one's neighbour*
 Auxiliary verbs, 72
 Avancer, *to advance; project*
 Avant, *before (with reference to time or order)*, 158; *avant la fin du mois, before the end of the month; avant que, gov. subj.*
 Avantage, *advantage*
 Avec, *with*
 Avenir, *future; à l'avenir, in future*
 Aveugle, *blind*
 Avis, *notice, counsel, opinion*
 Avoir, *to have*, p. 55;

AVO

avoir beau, *to try vainly; j'ai beau essayer, I vainly try*
 avoir besoin, *to need*
 avoir faim, *honte, peur, raison, etc., to be hungry, ashamed, afraid, right, etc.; n'avoir rien, to ail nothing; qu'y a-t-il? what is the matter? en avoir à, to be angry with; avoir envie de, to wish; avoir mal à, to be hurt in..., have pain in...*
 Avouer, *to own*
 Azur, *azure*
 Bas, *low*, p. 28
 Bal, *ball*
 Ballade, *f. ballad*
 Balle, *f. a toy-ball*
 Barreau, *bar*, pl. -x
 Bataille, *f. battle*
 Se bâtir, *to build for oneself; idiomatically, to be built*
 Bâton, *stick, downstroke*
 Beau, *f. belle, beautiful*, 105
 Beaucoup, *much*, 154
 Beauté, *f. beauty*
 Bec, *beak*
 Bénir, *to bless*, 76
 Bétail (pl. bestiaux), *cattle; but bétail is used in a pl. sense*
 Bête, *f. animal, beast*
 Bête, *adj. stupid*
 Bibliothèque, *f. library*
 Bien, *well; n. good; des biens, property*
 Bientôt, *soon*
 Billet, *note*
 Bizarre, *strange, odd*
 Blâmer, *to blame*
 Blessier, *to wound*
 Bleu, *blue*
 Boeuf, *ox*
 Bon, *-ne, f. good; bon-jour, good day, good morning*

CEP

Bonheur, *happiness*
 Bonté, *f. goodness*
 Bord, *edge, border*
 Bouilloire, *f. kettle*
 Bouleverser, *to upset, overturn*
 Bourgogne, *f. Burgundy*
 Bouvreuil, *bulfinch*
 Brasier, *hot coals; brasier; furnace*
 Briller, *to shine*
 Brouillé, *confused; être brouillé, to have quarrelled with*
 Bruissement, *rustling*
 Bruit, *noise*
 Brûler, *to burn*
 Brutalité, *f. brutality*
 Buffle, *buffalo*
 Bureau, *office; high desk (pl. -x)*
 Cabinet de travail, *study*
 Cadre, *frame*
 Cage, *f. cage*
 Cahier, *copy-book*
 Calcul, *sum*
 Calculer, *to calculate*
 Camarade, *m. or f. comrade*
 Car, *for*
 Caractère, *m. character*
 Carton, *cardboard; band-box*
 Cas, *case*
 En cas que, *in case, gov. subj.*
 Case, 3, 30
 Cataracte, *f. cataract, waterfall*
 Causier, *to converse; cause*
 Cavalier, *horseman*
 Ce, *that*, 54, 56; *c'est, il est, 118; c'est à, 53*
 Céder, *to yield*
 Cédille, *f. 12*
 Cela, *that*, 54
 Célèbre, *celebrated*
 Celui, *he*, p. 42
 Cendre, *f. cinder, ash*
 Cent, *hundred*, 43
 Cependant, *nevertheless; meanwhile*

CER

Certain, *certain*, 48 b
 Certainement, *certainly*
 Cesser, *ceasing*
 Chacun, *each*, 48 c., 126
 Chagriner, *to vex*
 Chaise, *f. chair*
 Chaleur, *f. heat*
 Champ, *field*; *sur le*
 champ, at once
 Changer, *to change*
 Chanson, *f. song*
 Chant, *song*
 Chanter, *to sing*; *chanter*
 faux, to sing out of
 tune; *chanter juste, to*
 sing in tune
 Chapeau, *hat*
 Chaque, *each*, 48, 112
 Chardonneret, *goldfinch*
 Charger, *to charge*; *load*
 Charmant, *charming*
 Charretier, *carter*
 Chasser, *to hunt*; *drive*
 away; *dismiss igno-*
 miniously
 Château, *castle*; *large*
 country house
 Chaud, *hot*; *avoir chaud,*
 to be hot
 Chef, *chief*
 Chemin, *road*; *way*; *on*
 chemin faisant, on
 the way
 Chêne, *oak*
 Cher, *dear*
 Chercher, *to seek, fetch*
 Cheval, *horse*, 26
 Cheveu (pl. -x), *hair*
 Chèvre, *f. goat*
 Chez, *at the house of*; *chez*
 moi, at my home
 Chien, *dog*
 Choir, *to fall*
 Choisir, *to choose*
 Chose, *f. thing*
 Chut! *hush!*
 Chute, *f. a fall*
 Ciel, *sky, heaven*, 27
 Ci-inclus, *included*, 104
 Ci-joint, *joined with this,*
 104
 Clairière, *f. a clearing*
 Clovis, *king of France,*
 A.D. 487-511

CŒU

Cœur, *heart*
 Colis, *a package*
 Collégien, *a schoolboy*
 Colonne, *f. column*
 Commander, *to command*
 Comme, *as*
 Commencer, *to begin*
 Comment, *how*, 157
 Commettre, *to commit*
 Compagnie, *f. company*
 Comparaison of *adj.*, 86
 Complement of *verb*, 132
 Se composer, *to compose,*
 be composed of
 Comprendre, *to compre-*
 hend
 Compte, *sum total, ac-*
 count
 Concentré, *concentrated*
 Concordance of *tenses*
 and moods, 144
 Conditional mood, 65,
 144
 Conduire, *to conduct,*
 drive
 Conduite, *f. conduct*
 Conférence, *f. lecture*
 Confus, *confused*, 86
 Conjunction, 91, 166
 Connaître, *to know*
 Conquérant, *conqueror*
 Conseil, *counsel*
 Consentir, *to consent*
 Consoler, *to console*
 Consonants, 6
 Constitutif, *constituent*
 Contraste, *contrast*
 Contre, *against*
 Contredire, *to contradict,*
 78
 Contrée, *f. country*
 Convenir de, *to own*;
 agree to; *settle*
 Copier, *to copy*
 Corne, *f. horn*
 Corps, *body*
 Correctement, *correctly*
 Correspondre, *to corre-*
 spond
 Corriger, *to correct*
 Cou, *neck*; *cou de biche,*
 doe's neck, or doe-like
 neck
 Couche, *f. stratum, bed*

DÉF

Couler, *to flow*; *cause*
 flow; *slip through*
 Couleur, *f. colour*
 Coup, *blow*; *coup d'œil,*
 glance
 Coupable, *guilty*
 Couple, *couple*, 24
 Courber, *to bend*
 Court, *short*
 Coûté, *p.* 168
 Couteau, *pl. -x. knife*
 Couvrir, *to cover*
 Craie, *f. chalk*
 Craindre, *to fear*
 Crainte que (de), *for fear*
 of; *lest*
 Craintif, *fearful*
 Craquement, *a cracking*
 Crayon, *pencil*
 Creuser, *to hollow*
 Cri, *a cry*
 Criminel, *f. criminal*
 Critique, *m. a critic*; *f.*
 a criticism
 Croire, *to believe*; *croire*
 que oui, to believe so
 Croiser (se), *to cross one*
 another
 Crouler, *to crumble down*
 Cueillir, *to pluck*
 Cuivre, *copper*
 Curieux, *curious*
 Cylindre, *cylander*

 Dame, *f. a lady*
 Dangereux, -se, *f. dan-*
 gerous
 Dans and en, 159
 Davantage, *more*, 154
 De, *of, from*, 165; *de*
 suite, without interrup-
 tion
 Débarrasser, *to disem-*
 barrass
 Débris, *wreck*; *remains*
 Débüt, *start in life, in a*
 profession; *first ap-*
 pearance; *beginning of*
 a book, &c.
 Décidément, *decidedly*
 Défendre, *to defend, for-*
 bid
 Défier de (se), *to mistrust*

ASS

Assassiner, to assassinate
 Assez, enough
 Assiduité, assiduity
 Attacher, to attach; fasten
 Attaque, f. attack
 Attaquer, to attack
 Attendre, to expect, wait for
 Attendu, considering that, 89
 Attribuer à, to attribute to
 Attribut, attribute
 Au, to the, 31
 Au-dessous de, below
 Au-dessus de, above
 Au lieu de, instead of
 Au pis aller, at the worst
 Augmentatives, 20
 Aujourd'hui, to-day, now-a-days
 Auparavant, first; before, adv.
 Auprès de, near to, 158
 Aussi, also; accordingly
 Autant, as much; d'autant moins, so much the less, 156
 Automne, m. and f. autumn
 Autour de, around, p. 132
 Autre, other
 Autrefois, formerly
 Autrui, another; one's neighbour
 Auxiliary verbs, 72
 Avancer, to advance; project
 Avant, before (with reference to time or order), 158; avant la fin du mois, before the end of the month; avant que, gov. subj.
 Avantage, advantage
 Avec, with
 Avenir, future; à l'avenir, in future
 Aveugle, blind
 Avis, notice, counsel, opinion
 Avoir, to have, p. 55;

AVO

avoir beau, to try vainly; j'ai beau essayer, I vainly try;
 avoir besoin, to need;
 avoir faim, honte, peur, raison, etc., to be hungry, ashamed, afraid, right, etc.; n'avoir rien, to avail nothing; qu'y a-t-il? what is the matter? en avoir à, to be angry with;
 avoir envie de, to wish;
 avoir mal à, to be hurt in..., have pain in...
 Avouer, to own
 Azur, azure
 Bas, low, p. 28
 Bal, ball
 Ballade, f. ballad
 Balle, f. a toy-ball
 Barreau, bar, pl. -x
 Bataille, f. battle
 Se bâtir, to build for oneself; idiomatically, to be built
 Bâton, stick, downstroke
 Beau, f. belle, beautiful, 105
 Beaucoup, much, 154
 Beauté, f. beauty
 Bec, beak
 Bénir, to bless, 76
 Bétail (pl. bestiaux), cattle; but bétail is used in a pl. sense
 Bête, f. animal, beast
 Bête, adj. stupid
 Bibliothèque, f. library
 Bien, well; n. good; des biens, property
 Bientôt, soon.
 Billet, note
 Bizarre, strange, odd
 Blâmer, to blame
 Blessure, to wound
 Bleu, blue
 Bœuf, ox
 Bon, -ne, f. good; bon-jour, good day, good morning

CEP

Bonheur, happiness
 Bonté, f. goodness
 Bord, edge, border
 Bouilloire, f. kettle
 Bouleverser, to upset, overturn
 Bourgogne, f. Burgundy
 Bouvreuil, bulfinch
 Brasier, hot coals; brasier; furnace
 Briller, to shine
 Brouillé, confused; être brouillé, to have quarrelled with
 Bruissement, rustling
 Bruit, noise
 Brûler, to burn
 Brutalité, f. brutality
 Buffle, buffalo
 Bureau, office; high desk (pl. -x)
 Cabinet de travail, study
 Cadre, frame
 Cage, f. cage
 Cahier, copy-book
 Calcul, sum
 Calculer, to calculate
 Camerade, m. or f. comrade
 Car, for
 Caractère, m. character
 Carton, cardboard; band-box
 Cas, case
 En cas que, in case, gov. subj.
 Case, 3, 30
 Cataracte, f. cataract, waterfall
 Causser, to converse; cause
 Cavalier, horseman
 Ce, that, 54, 56; c'est, it est, 118; c'est à, 53
 Céder, to yield
 Cédille, f. 12
 Cela, that, 54
 Célèbre, celebrated
 Celui, he, p. 42
 Cendre, f. cinder, ash
 Cent, hundred, 43
 Cependant, nevertheless; meanwhile

CER

Certain, *certain*, 48 b
 Certainement, *certainly*
 Cesser, *ceasing*
 Chacun, *each*, 48 c., 126
 Chagriner, *to vex*
 Chaise, *f. chair*
 Chaleur, *f. heat*
 Champ, *field*; *sur le*
 champ, at once
 Changer, *to change*
 Chanson, *f. song*
 Chant, *song*
 Chanter, *to sing*; *chanter*
 faux, to sing out of
 tune; *chanter juste, to*
 sing in tune
 Chapeau, *hat*
 Chaque, *each*, 48, 112
 Chardonneret, *goldfinch*
 Charger, *to charge*; *load*
 Charmant, *charming*
 Charretier, *carter*
 Chasser, *to hunt*; *drive*
 away; *dismiss igno-*
 miniously
 Château, *castle*; *large*
 country house
 Chaud, *hot*; *avoir chaud,*
 to be hot
 Chef, *chief*
 Chemin, *road*; *way*;
 chemin faisant, on
 the way
 Chêne, *oak*.
 Cher, *dear*
 Chercher, *to seek, fetch*
 Cheval, *horse*, 26
 Cheveu (pl. -x), *hair*
 Chèvre, *f. goat*
 Chez, *at the house of*; *chez*
 moi, at my home
 Chien, *dog*
 Choir, *to fall*
 Choisir, *to choose*
 Chose, *f. thing*
 Chut! *hush!*
 Chute, *f. a fall*
 Ciel, *sky, heaven*, 27
 Ci-inclus, *included*, 104
 Ci-joint, *joined with this*,
 104
 Clairière, *f. a clearing*
 Clovis, *king of France*,
 A.D. 487-511

CŒU

Cœur, *heart*
 Colis, *a package*
 Collégien, *a schoolboy*
 Colonne, *f. column*
 Commander, *to command*
 Comme, *as*
 Commencer, *to begin*
 Comment, *how*, 157
 Commettre, *to commit*
 Compagnie, *f. company*
 Comparison of adj., 36
 Complement of verb, 132
 Se composer, *to compose*,
 be composed of
 Comprendre, *to compre-*
 hend
 Compte, *sum total, ac-*
 count
 Concentré, *concentrated*
 Concordance of tenses
 and moods, 144
 Conditional mood, 65,
 144
 Conduire, *to conduct*,
 drive
 Conduite, *f. conduct*
 Conférence, *f. lecture*
 Confus, *confused*, 86
 Conjunction, 91, 166
 Connaître, *to know*
 Conquérant, *conqueror*
 Conseil, *counsel*
 Consentir, *to consent*
 Consoler, *to console*
 Consonants, 6
 Constitutif, *constituent*
 Contraste, *contrast*
 Contre, *against*
 Contredire, *to contradict*,
 78
 Contrée, *f. country*
 Convenir de, *to own*;
 agree to; *settle*
 Copier, *to copy*
 Corne, *f. horn*
 Corps, *body*
 Correctement, *correctly*
 Correspondre, *to corre-*
 spond
 Corriger, *to correct*
 Cou, *neck*; *cou de biche*,
 doe's neck, or doe-like
 neck
 Couche, *f. stratum, bed*

DÉF

Couler, *to flow*; *cause*
 flow; *slip through*
 Couleur, *f. colour*
 Coup, *blow*; *coup d'œil*,
 glance
 Coupable, *guilty*
 Couple, *couple*, 24
 Courber, *to bend*
 Court, *short*
 Coûté, p. 168
 Couteau, pl. -x, *knife*
 Couvrir, *to cover*
 Craie, *f. chalk*
 Craindre, *to fear*
 Crainte que (de), *for fear*
 of; *lest*
 Craintif, *fearful*
 Craquement, *a cracking*
 Crayon, *pencil*
 Creuser, *to hollow*
 Cri, *a cry*
 Criminel, *f. criminal*
 Critique, m. *a critic*; *f.*
 a criticism
 Croire, *to believe*; *croire*
 que oui, to believe so
 Croiser (se), *to cross one*
 another
 Crouler, *to crumble down*
 Cueillir, *to pluck*
 Cuivre, *copper*
 Curieux, *curious*
 Cylindre, *cylinder*

 Dame, *f. a lady*
 Dangereux, -se, *f. dan-*
 gerous
 Dans and en, 159
 Davantage, *more*, 154
 De, *of, from*, 165; *de*
 suite, without interrup-
 tion
 Débarrasser, *to disem-*
 barrass
 Débris, *wreck*; *remains*
 Début, *start in life, in a*
 profession; *first ap-*
 pearance; *beginning of*
 a book, &c.
 Décidément, *decidedly*
 Défendre, *to defend, for-*
 bid
 Défier de (se), *to mistrust*

MANUALS OF THE SCIENCE AND ART OF TEACHING.

Being Three Series of Independent Manuals.

The **FIRST SERIES**, which relates to the **SCIENCE** of Teaching, consists of—

1. **THE CULTIVATION OF THE SENSES.** Price 8d.
2. **THE CULTIVATION OF THE MEMORY.** Price 6d.
3. **ON THE USE OF WORDS.** Price 8d.
4. **ON DISCIPLINE.** Price 8d.
5. **ON CLASS TEACHING.** Price 6d.

The **SECOND SERIES**, which relates to the **ART** of Teaching, consists of—

1. **HOW TO TEACH GRAMMAR.** Price 8d.
2. **ARITHMETIC AND HOW TO TEACH IT.** Price 8d.
3. **HOW TO TEACH GEOGRAPHY.** Price 6d.
4. **HOW TO TEACH HISTORY.** Price 8d.
5. **HOW TO TEACH READING AND WRITING.** Price 8d.
6. **HOW TO TEACH BY MEANS OF APPARATUS.** Price 8d.

The **ADVANCED SERIES**, which relates to the **ART** of Teaching the more Advanced Subjects, consists of—

1. **HOW TO TEACH ENGLISH LITERATURE.** Price 8d.
2. **HOW TO TEACH LANGUAGES.** Price 8d.
3. **HOW TO TEACH MECHANICS.** Price 8d.
4. **HOW TO TEACH ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY.** Price 8d.
5. **HOW TO TEACH PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.** Price 10d.
6. **HOW TO TEACH BOTANY.** Price 8d.
7. **HOW TO TEACH DOMESTIC ECONOMY (Branch I.).** Price 8d.
8. **HOW TO TEACH DOMESTIC ECONOMY (Branch II.).** Price 8d.
9. **HOW TO TRAIN PUPIL TEACHERS.** Price 8d.

THE TEACHER'S MANUAL OF THE SCIENCE AND ART OF TEACHING.

Being the First and Second Series of the above Manuals, in one volume
Price 5s. 6d.

THE ADVANCED MANUAL OF TEACHING.

Being the Third Series of the above Manuals, in one volume. Price 5s. 6d.

LOCKE'S THOUGHTS ON EDUCATION.

With Introduction and Notes. By the Rev. EVAN DANIEL, M.A., Principal of the National Society's Training College, Battersea. Price 4s. cloth.

This is a complete Edition of the Work, and is illustrated by Passages from eminent Educationists.

THE YOUNG STUDENT'S ENGLISH HISTORY READING BOOK.

This Book consists of a series of 'Pictures' of the more important events in the History of England from the Saxon Conquest to the Present Time, with an intervening series of 'Hints for the Study of the Intermediate Periods.' Price 2s.

N.B.—This Book is intended to be used as a Reading Book for Pupil Teachers.

NATIONAL SOCIETY'S DEPOSITORY, WESTMINSTER.



